

ISO 20022

Payments Mandates - Maintenance 2023 - 2024

## Message Definition Report - Part 2

Approved by the Payments SEG on 08 January 2024

This document provides details of the Message Definitions for Payments Mandates - Maintenance 2023 - 2024.

March 2024

# Table of Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Message Set Overview</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1	List of MessageDefinitions	3
<b>2</b>	<b>pain.009.001.08 MandateInitiationRequestV08</b>	<b>5</b>
2.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	5
2.2	Structure	6
2.3	Constraints	7
2.4	Message Building Blocks	8
<b>3</b>	<b>pain.010.001.08 MandateAmendmentRequestV08</b>	<b>32</b>
3.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	32
3.2	Structure	33
3.3	Constraints	36
3.4	Message Building Blocks	37
<b>4</b>	<b>pain.011.001.08 MandateCancellationRequestV08</b>	<b>86</b>
4.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	86
4.2	Structure	87
4.3	Constraints	89
4.4	Message Building Blocks	90
<b>5</b>	<b>pain.012.001.08 MandateAcceptanceReportV08</b>	<b>120</b>
5.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	120
5.2	Structure	121
5.3	Constraints	123
5.4	Message Building Blocks	124
<b>6</b>	<b>pain.017.001.04 MandateCopyRequestV04</b>	<b>153</b>
6.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	153
6.2	Structure	154
6.3	Constraints	155
6.4	Message Building Blocks	157
<b>7</b>	<b>pain.018.001.04 MandateSuspensionRequestV04</b>	<b>185</b>
7.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	185
7.2	Structure	186
7.3	Constraints	188
7.4	Message Building Blocks	189
<b>8</b>	<b>Message Items Types</b>	<b>219</b>
8.1	MessageComponents	219
8.2	Message Datatypes	260

# 1 Message Set Overview

## Introduction

This document describes the Payments Mandates message set. It includes the new version of the MessageDefinitions that have been added as part of the maintenance cycle 2023-2024 (See MCR #234) and approved by the Payments Standards Evaluation Group on 08 January 2024.

## 1.1 List of MessageDefinitions

The following table lists all MessageDefinitions described in this book.

MessageDefinition	Definition
pain.009.001.08 MandateInitiationRequestV08	<p>The MandateInitiationRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to his agent. The initiator can either be the debtor or the creditor.</p> <p>The MandateInitiationRequest message is forwarded by the agent of the initiator to the agent of the counterparty.</p> <p>The MandateInitiationRequest message is used to setup the instruction that allows the debtor agent to accept instructions from the creditor, through the creditor agent, to debit the account of the debtor.</p>
pain.010.001.08 MandateAmendmentRequestV08	<p>The MandateAmendmentRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to his agent and/or counterparty. The initiator can both be the debtor or the creditor (or where appropriate the debtor agent).</p> <p>The MandateAmendmentRequest message is forwarded by the agent of the initiator to the agent of the counterparty.</p> <p>A MandateAmendmentRequest message is used to request the amendment of specific information in an existing mandate. The MandateAmendmentRequest message must reflect the new data of the element(s) to be amended and at a minimum a unique reference to the existing mandate. If accepted, this MandateAmendmentRequest message together with the MandateAcceptanceReport message confirming the acceptance will be considered as a valid amendment on an existing mandate, agreed upon by all parties. The amended mandate will from then on be considered the valid mandate.</p>
pain.011.001.08 MandateCancellationRequestV08	<p>The MandateCancellationRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to his agent. The initiator can either be the debtor or the creditor.</p> <p>The MandateCancellationRequest message is forwarded by the agent of the initiator to the agent of the counterparty.</p> <p>A MandateCancellationRequest message is used to request the cancellation of an existing mandate. If accepted, this MandateCancellationRequest message together with the MandateAcceptanceReport message confirming the acceptance will be considered a valid</p>

MessageDefinition	Definition
	cancellation of an existing mandate, agreed upon by all parties.
pain.012.001.08 MandateAcceptanceReportV08	<p>The MandateAcceptanceReport message is sent from the agent of the receiver (debtor or creditor) of the MandateRequest message (initiation, amendment or cancellation) to the agent of the initiator of the MandateRequest message (debtor or creditor).</p> <p>A MandateAcceptanceReport message is used to confirm the acceptance or rejection of a MandateRequest message. Where acceptance is part of the full process flow, a MandateRequest message only becomes valid after a confirmation of acceptance is received through a MandateAcceptanceReport message from the agent of the receiver.</p>
pain.017.001.04 MandateCopyRequestV04	<p>The MandateCopyRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to his agent. The initiator can either be the debtor or the creditor.</p> <p>The MandateCopyRequest message is forwarded by the agent of the initiator to the agent of the counterparty.</p> <p>A MandateCopyRequest message is used to request a copy of an existing mandate. If accepted, the mandate copy can be sent using the MandateAcceptanceReport message.</p>
pain.018.001.04 MandateSuspensionRequestV04	<p>The MandateSuspensionRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to its agent. The initiator can either be the debtor, debtor agent, creditor or creditor agent.</p> <p>A MandateSuspensionRequest message is used to request the suspension of an existing mandate until the suspension is lifted.</p>

## 2 **pain.009.001.08 MandateInitiationRequestV08**

### 2.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

#### Scope

The MandateInitiationRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to his agent. The initiator can either be the debtor or the creditor.

The MandateInitiationRequest message is forwarded by the agent of the initiator to the agent of the counterparty.

The MandateInitiationRequest message is used to setup the instruction that allows the debtor agent to accept instructions from the creditor, through the creditor agent, to debit the account of the debtor.

#### Usage

The MandateInitiationRequest message can contain one or more request(s) to setup a specific mandate.

The messages can be exchanged between creditor and creditor agent or debtor and debtor agent and between creditor agent and debtor agent.

The message can also be used by an initiating party that has authority to send the message on behalf of the creditor or debtor.

The MandateInitiationRequest message can be used in domestic and cross-border scenarios.

#### Outline

The MandateInitiationRequestV08 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

##### A. GroupHeader

Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the mandate initiation, but which are not part of the mandate.

##### B. Mandate

Set of elements used to provide the details of the mandate signed between the (ultimate) creditor and the (ultimate) debtor.

##### C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 2.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <MndtInitnReq>	[1..1]		C10	
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			8
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		9
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		9
	<b>Authorisation</b> <Authstn>	[0..2]	±		9
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		9
	<b>InstructingAgent</b> <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		10
	<b>InstructedAgent</b> <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		11
	<b>Mandate</b> <Mndt>	[1..*]		C12, C13	12
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[0..*]	Text		14
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[1..1]	Text		14
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		14
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		15
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		15
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		15
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	16
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	16
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	16
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		17
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			17
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		17
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		18
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmId>	[0..1]	±		18
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		19
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C9, C8	20
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		21
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		22
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		23
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C9, C8	24

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		25
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		26
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		27
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			28
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			28
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			28
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		29
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		29
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		29
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		29
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		29
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			29
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			30
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		30
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		30
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		30
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C11	30
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C11	31

## 2.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C4 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C5 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C6 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C7 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C8 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C9 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C10 SupplementaryDataRule**

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C11 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

**C12 UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

**C13 UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

## 2.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 2.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the mandate initiation, but which are not part of the mandate.



**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **GroupHeader110** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		9
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		9
	<b>Authorisation</b> <Authstn>	[0..2]	±		9
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		9
	<b>InstructingAgent</b> <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		10
	<b>InstructedAgent</b> <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		11

#### 2.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the instructed party, to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 2.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 270

#### 2.4.1.3 Authorisation <Authstn>

*Presence:* [0..2]

*Definition:* User identification or any user key to be used to check the authority of the initiating party.

*Usage:* The content is not of a technical nature, but reflects the organisational structure at the initiating side. The authorisation element can typically be used in relay scenarios, payment initiations, payment returns or payment reversals that are initiated on behalf of a party different from the initiating party.

**Authorisation <Authstn>** contains one of the following elements (see "Authorisation1Choice" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		242
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		243

#### 2.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that initiates the mandate message.

**InitiatingParty <InitgPty>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 2.4.1.5 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

*Usage Rule:*

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructing agent is the party sending the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that sent the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructing agent is the party sending the acceptance report message and not the party that sent the original mandate request message.

**InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 2.4.1.6 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

Usage Rule:

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructed agent is the party receiving the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that received the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructed agent is the party receiving the acceptance report message and not the party that received the original mandate request message.

**InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

## 2.4.2 Mandate <Mndt>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide the details of the mandate signed between the (ultimate) creditor and the (ultimate) debtor.

*Impacted by:* C12 "UltimateCreditorGuideline", C13 "UltimateDebtorGuideline"

**Mandate <Mndt>** contains the following **Mandate23** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[0..*]	Text		14
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqlId>	[1..1]	Text		14
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		14
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		15
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		15
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		15
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	16
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	16
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	16
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		17
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			17
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		17
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		18
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		18
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		19
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C9, C8	20
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		21
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		22
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		23
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C9, C8	24
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		25
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		26
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		27
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			28
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			28
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			28
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		29
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		29
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		29
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		29
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		29

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			29
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			30
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		30
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		30
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		30
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C11	30

#### Constraints

- **UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

- **UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

#### 2.4.2.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the responsible party (such as the creditor) or agent (such as the debtor agent), to unambiguously identify the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 2.4.2.2 MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification for the mandate request, as assigned by the initiating party.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 2.4.2.3 Authentication <Authntcn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the transport authentication details related to the mandate.

**Authentication <Authntcn>** contains the following elements (see "MandateAuthentication1" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageAuthenticationCode <MsgAuthntcnCd>	[0..1]	Text		234
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		235
	Channel <Chanl>	[0..1]			235
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		235
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		235

#### 2.4.2.4 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following elements (see "MandateTypeInformation2" on page 238 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		239
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		239
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			240
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	Classification <Clssfctn>	[0..1]	±		240

#### 2.4.2.5 Occurrences <Ocrncs>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the duration of the mandate and occurrence of the underlying transactions.

**Occurrences <Ocrncs>** contains the following elements (see "MandateOccurrences5" on page 235 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		236
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		236
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]			236
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		237
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237

#### 2.4.2.6 TrackingIndicator <TrckgInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the direct debit instructions should be automatically re-submitted periodically when bilaterally agreed.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see ["TrueFalseIndicator"](#) on page 272):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 2.4.2.7 FirstCollectionAmount <FrstColltnAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount different from the collection amount, as it includes the costs associated with the first debited amount.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 260

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 2.4.2.8 CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Fixed amount to be collected from the debtor's account.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 260

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 2.4.2.9 MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Maximum amount that may be collected from the debtor's account, per instruction.



*Impacted by:* C1 "ActiveCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 260

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 2.4.2.10 Adjustment <Adjstmnt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the characteristics of the adjustment applied to the collection amount of a direct debit instruction.

**Adjustment <Adjstmnt>** contains the following elements (see "MandateAdjustment1" on page 237 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAdjustmentRuleIndicator <DtAdjstmntRuleInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		237
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	±		238
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	238
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		238

### 2.4.2.11 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the reason for the setup of the mandate.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		17
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		18

#### 2.4.2.11.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code" on page 266

**2.4.2.11.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 275

**2.4.2.12 CreditorSchemeldentification <CdtrSchmeld>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Credit party that signs the mandate.

**CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 2.4.2.13 Creditor <Cdtr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that signs the mandate and to whom an amount of money is due.

**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 2.4.2.14 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

*Impacted by:* C9 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C8 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 219 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		220
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	220
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		221
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		221

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 2.4.2.15 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

**CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 2.4.2.16 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

**UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 2.4.2.17 Debtor <Dbtr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that signs the mandate and owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 2.4.2.18 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor, to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

*Impacted by:* C9 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C8 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"



**DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 219 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		220
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	220
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		221
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		221

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 2.4.2.19 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

**DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 2.4.2.20 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 2.4.2.21 MandateReference <MndtRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference assigned by a creditor or ultimate creditor for internal usage for the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

## 2.4.2.22 ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Provides information to identify the underlying documents associated with the mandate.

**ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>** contains the following **ReferredMandateDocument2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			28
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			28
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		29
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		29
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		29
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		29
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		29
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			29
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			30
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		30
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		30
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		30

### 2.4.2.22.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of referred document.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following **DocumentType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			28
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		29
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		29
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		29

#### 2.4.2.22.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Coded or proprietary format referred document type.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **DocumentType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		29
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		29

#### 2.4.2.22.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of remittance document, as published in an external document type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDocumentType1Code" on page 265

#### 2.4.2.22.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of remittance document, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 2.4.2.22.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 2.4.2.22.2 Number <Nb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 2.4.2.22.3 CreditorReference <CdtrRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification as assigned by the creditor to the referred document shared with the debtor for its own reference.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 2.4.2.22.4 RelatedDate <RltdDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and type associated with the referred document.

**RelatedDate <RltdDt>** contains the following **DateAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]			30
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		30
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		30
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Date		30

#### 2.4.2.22.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of date associated with the referred document.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DateType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		30
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		30

##### 2.4.2.22.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date type, as published in an external date type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDateType1Code" on page 264

##### 2.4.2.22.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

##### 2.4.2.22.4.2 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 270

#### 2.4.2.23 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements within the message component.

*Impacted by:* C11 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1" on page 243](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		243
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		243

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 2.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C11 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1" on page 243](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		243
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		243

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 3 **pain.010.001.08 MandateAmendmentRequestV08**

### 3.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

#### Scope

The MandateAmendmentRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to his agent and/or counterparty. The initiator can both be the debtor or the creditor (or where appropriate the debtor agent).

The MandateAmendmentRequest message is forwarded by the agent of the initiator to the agent of the counterparty.

A MandateAmendmentRequest message is used to request the amendment of specific information in an existing mandate. The MandateAmendmentRequest message must reflect the new data of the element(s) to be amended and at a minimum a unique reference to the existing mandate. If accepted, this MandateAmendmentRequest message together with the MandateAcceptanceReport message confirming the acceptance will be considered as a valid amendment on an existing mandate, agreed upon by all parties. The amended mandate will from then on be considered the valid mandate.

#### Usage

The MandateAmendmentRequest message can contain one or more request(s) to amend a specific mandate.

The messages can be exchanged between creditor and creditor agent or debtor and debtor agent and between creditor agent and debtor agent.

The message can also be used by an initiating party that has authority to send the message on behalf of the creditor or debtor.

The MandateAmendmentRequest message can be used in domestic and cross-border scenarios.

If all elements in the existing Mandate need to be amended or the underlying contract is different, then the MandateAmendmentRequest message should not be used. The existing Mandate has to be cancelled and a new Mandate has to be initiated.

#### Outline

The MandateAmendmentRequestV08 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

##### A. GroupHeader

Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the amendment of the mandate, but which are not part of the mandate.

##### B. UnderlyingAmendmentDetails

Set of elements used to provide details on the amendment request.

##### C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.



## 3.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <MndtAmdmntReq>	[1..1]		C11	
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			37
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		38
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		38
	<b>Authorisation</b> <Authstn>	[0..2]	±		38
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		38
	<b>InstructingAgent</b> <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		39
	<b>InstructedAgent</b> <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		40
	<b>UnderlyingAmendmentDetails</b> <UndrlygAmdmntDtls>	[1..*]			41
	<b>OriginalMessageInformation</b> <OrgrnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		44
	<b>AmendmentReason</b> <AmdmntRsn>	[1..1]			45
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		45
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[1..1]			46
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		47
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		47
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		47
	<b>Mandate</b> <Mndt>	[1..1]		C13, C15	47
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		49
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		49
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		49
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		50
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		50
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		50
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	51
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	51
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	51
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		52
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			52
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		52

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		52
	<b>CreditorSchemeldentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		53
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		54
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	55
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		56
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		57
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		58
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	59
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		60
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		61
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		62
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			63
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			63
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			63
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		64
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			64
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			65
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		65
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		65
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		65
	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]			65
{Or	<b>OriginalMandateldentification</b> <OrgnlMndtld>	[1..1]	Text		67
Or}	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C14, C16	67
	<b>Mandateldentification</b> <Mndtld>	[1..1]	Text		69
	<b>MandateRequestldentification</b> <MndtReqlld>	[0..1]	Text		69
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		69
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		69

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		70
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		70
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	71
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	71
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	71
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		72
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			72
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		72
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		72
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		73
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		74
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	74
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		75
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		76
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		77
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	78
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		79
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		80
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		81
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			82
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			82
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			82
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		83
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		83
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		83
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		83
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			83
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			84
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		84

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		84
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	84
	SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	85

### 3.3 Constraints

#### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

#### C3 AnyBIC

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

#### C4 BICFI

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

#### C5 Country

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### C6 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### C7 CurrencyAmount

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### C8 IBAN

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C9 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C10 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C11 SupplementaryDataRule**

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C12 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

**C13 UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

**C14 UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

**C15 UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

**C16 UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

## 3.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 3.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the amendment of the mandate, but which are not part of the mandate.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **GroupHeader110** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		38
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		38
	<b>Authorisation</b> <Authstn>	[0..2]	±		38
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		38
	<b>InstructingAgent</b> <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		39
	<b>InstructedAgent</b> <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		40

### 3.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the instructed party, to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

### 3.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 270

### 3.4.1.3 Authorisation <Authstn>

*Presence:* [0..2]

*Definition:* User identification or any user key to be used to check the authority of the initiating party.

*Usage:* The content is not of a technical nature, but reflects the organisational structure at the initiating side. The authorisation element can typically be used in relay scenarios, payment initiations, payment returns or payment reversals that are initiated on behalf of a party different from the initiating party.

**Authorisation <Authstn>** contains one of the following elements (see "Authorisation1Choice" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		242
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		243

### 3.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that initiates the mandate message.

**InitiatingParty <InitgPty>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

### 3.4.1.5 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

*Usage Rule:*

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructing agent is the party sending the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that sent the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructing agent is the party sending the acceptance report message and not the party that sent the original mandate request message.

**InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

### 3.4.1.6 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

Usage Rule:

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructed agent is the party receiving the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that received the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructed agent is the party receiving the acceptance report message and not the party that received the original mandate request message.



**InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

### 3.4.2 UnderlyingAmendmentDetails <UndrlygAmdmntDtls>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the amendment request.

**UnderlyingAmendmentDetails <UndrlygAmdmntDtls>** contains the following **MandateAmendment8** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>OriginalMessageInformation</b> <OrgnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		44
	<b>AmendmentReason</b> <AmdmntRsn>	[1..1]			45
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		45
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[1..1]			46
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		47
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		47
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		47
	<b>Mandate</b> <Mndt>	[1..1]		C13, C15	47
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		49
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		49
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		49
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		50
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		50
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		50
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	51
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	51
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	51
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		52
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			52
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		52
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		52
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		53
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		54
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	55
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		56
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		57
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		58
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	59
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		60
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		61

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		62
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			63
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			63
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			63
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		64
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			64
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			65
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		65
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		65
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		65
	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]			65
{Or	<b>OriginalMandateIdentification</b> <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		67
Or}	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C14, C16	67
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		69
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		69
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		69
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		69
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		70
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		70
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	71
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	71
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	71
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		72
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			72
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		72
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		72
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		73

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		74
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	74
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		75
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		76
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		77
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	78
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		79
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		80
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		81
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			82
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			82
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			82
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		83
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		83
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		83
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		83
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			83
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			84
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		84
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		84
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	84

### 3.4.2.1 OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on the original message.

**OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>** contains the following elements (see "OriginalMessageInformation1" on page 241 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		242
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		242
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		242

### 3.4.2.2 AmendmentReason <AmdmntRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides detailed information on the amendment reason.

**AmendmentReason <AmdmntRsn>** contains the following **MandateAmendmentReason3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		45
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[1..1]			46
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		47
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		47
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		47

#### 3.4.2.2.1 Originator <Orgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that issues the amendment request.

**Originator <Orgtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

### 3.4.2.2.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the amendment request.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **MandateReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		47
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		47

#### 3.4.2.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalMandateReason1Code" on page 266

#### 3.4.2.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 3.4.2.2.3 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Further details on the amendment request reason.

*Datatype:* "Max105Text" on page 273

#### 3.4.2.3 Mandate <Mndt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the amended mandate data.

*Impacted by:* C13 "UltimateCreditorGuideline", C15 "UltimateDebtorGuideline"

**Mandate <Mndt>** contains the following **Mandate21** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		49
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqlId>	[0..1]	Text		49
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		49
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		50
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		50
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		50
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	51
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	51
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C6	51
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		52
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			52
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		52
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		52
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		53
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		54
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	55
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		56
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		57
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		58
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	59
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		60
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		61
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		62
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			63
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			63
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			63
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		64
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		64



Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			64
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			65
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		65
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		65
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		65

#### Constraints

- **UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

- **UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

#### 3.4.2.3.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the responsible party (such as the creditor) or agent (such as the debtor agent), to unambiguously identify the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 3.4.2.3.2 MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification for the mandate request, as assigned by the initiating party.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 3.4.2.3.3 Authentication <Authntcn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the transport authentication details related to the mandate.

**Authentication <Authntcn>** contains the following elements (see "[MandateAuthentication1](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageAuthenticationCode <MsgAuthntcnCd>	[0..1]	Text		234
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		235
	Channel <ChanI>	[0..1]			235
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		235
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		235

### 3.4.2.3.4 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following elements (see "MandateTypeInformation2" on page 238 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		239
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		239
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			240
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	Classification <Clssfctn>	[0..1]	±		240

### 3.4.2.3.5 Occurrences <Ocrncs>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the duration of the mandate and occurrence of the underlying transactions.

**Occurrences <Ocrncs>** contains the following elements (see "MandateOccurrences5" on page 235 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		236
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		236
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]			236
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		237
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237

### 3.4.2.3.6 TrackingIndicator <TrckgInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the direct debit instructions should be automatically re-submitted periodically when bilaterally agreed.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see ["TrueFalseIndicator"](#) on page 272):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 3.4.2.3.7 FirstCollectionAmount <FrstColltnAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount different from the collection amount, as it includes the costs associated with the first debited amount.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 260

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 3.4.2.3.8 CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Fixed amount to be collected from the debtor's account.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 260

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 3.4.2.3.9 MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Maximum amount that may be collected from the debtor's account, per instruction.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C6 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* "ActiveCurrencyAndAmount" on page 260

#### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### 3.4.2.3.10 Adjustment <Adjstmnt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the characteristics of the adjustment applied to the collection amount of a direct debit instruction.

**Adjustment <Adjstmnt>** contains the following elements (see "MandateAdjustment1" on page 237 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAdjustmentRuleIndicator <DtAdjstmntRuleInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		237
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	±		238
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	238
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		238

### 3.4.2.3.11 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the reason for the setup of the mandate.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		52
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		52

#### 3.4.2.3.11.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code" on page 266

#### 3.4.2.3.11.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 275

#### **3.4.2.3.12 CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Credit party that signs the mandate.

**CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

### 3.4.2.3.13 Creditor <Cdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that signs the mandate and to whom an amount of money is due.

**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 3.4.2.3.14 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

*Impacted by:* C10 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C9 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "[CashAccount40](#)" on page 219 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		220
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	220
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		221
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		221

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 3.4.2.3.15 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.



**CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 3.4.2.3.16 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

**UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

### 3.4.2.3.17 Debtor <Dbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that signs the mandate and owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

### 3.4.2.3.18 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor, to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

*Impacted by:* C10 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C9 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 219 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		220
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	220
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		221
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		221

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 3.4.2.3.19 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

**DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 3.4.2.3.20 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

### 3.4.2.3.21 MandateReference <MndtRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference assigned by a creditor or ultimate creditor for internal usage for the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

**3.4.2.3.22 ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Provides information to identify the underlying documents associated with the mandate.**ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>** contains the following **ReferredMandateDocument2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[0..1]			63
	<b>CodeOrProprietary &lt;CdOrPrtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]			63
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		64
	<b>Issuer &lt;Issr&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>Number &lt;Nb&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>CreditorReference &lt;CdtrRef&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		64
	<b>RelatedDate &lt;RltdDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]			64
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]			65
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		65
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		65
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Date		65

**3.4.2.3.22.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of referred document.**Type <Tp>** contains the following **DocumentType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>CodeOrProprietary &lt;CdOrPrtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]			63
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		64
	<b>Issuer &lt;Issr&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		64

**3.4.2.3.22.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Coded or proprietary format referred document type.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **DocumentType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		64

#### 3.4.2.3.22.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of remittance document, as published in an external document type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDocumentType1Code" on page 265

#### 3.4.2.3.22.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of remittance document, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 3.4.2.3.22.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 3.4.2.3.22.2 Number <Nb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 3.4.2.3.22.3 CreditorReference <CdtrRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification as assigned by the creditor to the referred document shared with the debtor for its own reference.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 3.4.2.3.22.4 RelatedDate <RltdDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and type associated with the referred document.



**RelatedDate <RltdDt>** contains the following **DateAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]			65
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		65
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		65
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Date		65

#### 3.4.2.3.22.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of date associated with the referred document.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DateType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		65
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		65

##### 3.4.2.3.22.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date type, as published in an external date type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDateType1Code" on page 264

##### 3.4.2.3.22.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

##### 3.4.2.3.22.4.2 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 270

#### 3.4.2.4 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the original mandate data.

**OriginalMandate** <OrgnlMndt> contains one of the following **OriginalMandate10Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>OriginalMandateIdentification</b> <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		67
Or}	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C14, C16	67
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		69
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		69
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		69
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		69
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		70
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		70
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	71
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	71
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	71
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		72
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			72
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		72
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		72
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmId>	[0..1]	±		73
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		74
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	74
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		75
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		76
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		77
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	78
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		79
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		80
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		81
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			82
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			82
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			82
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		83

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Issuer</b> </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		83
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		83
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		83
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			83
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			84
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		84
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		84

#### 3.4.2.4.1 OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the responsible party (such as the creditor) or agent (such as the debtor agent), to unambiguously identify the original mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 3.4.2.4.2 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the original mandate data.

*Impacted by:* C14 "UltimateCreditorGuideline", C16 "UltimateDebtorGuideline"

**OriginalMandate** <OrgnlMndt> contains the following **Mandate20** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		69
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqlId>	[0..1]	Text		69
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		69
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		69
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		70
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		70
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	71
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	71
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C7	71
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		72
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			72
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		72
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		72
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		73
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		74
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	74
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		75
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		76
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		77
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	78
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		79
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		80
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		81
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			82
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			82
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			82
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		83
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		83
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		83
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		83

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			83
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			84
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		84
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		84

#### Constraints

- **UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

- **UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

#### 3.4.2.4.2.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the responsible party (such as the creditor) or agent (such as the debtor agent), to unambiguously identify the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 3.4.2.4.2.2 MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification for the mandate request, as assigned by the initiating party.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 3.4.2.4.2.3 Authentication <Authntcn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the transport authentication details related to the mandate.

**Authentication <Authntcn>** contains the following elements (see "[MandateAuthentication1](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageAuthenticationCode <MsgAuthntcnCd>	[0..1]	Text		234
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		235
	Channel <Chanl>	[0..1]			235
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		235
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		235

#### 3.4.2.4.2.4 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following elements (see "MandateTypeInformation2" on page 238 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		239
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		239
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			240
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	Classification <Clssfctn>	[0..1]	±		240

#### 3.4.2.4.2.5 Occurrences <Ocrncs>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the duration of the mandate and occurrence of the underlying transactions.

**Occurrences <Ocrncs>** contains the following elements (see "MandateOccurrences5" on page 235 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		236
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		236
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]			236
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		237
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237

#### 3.4.2.4.2.6 TrackingIndicator <TrckgInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the direct debit instructions should be automatically re-submitted periodically when bilaterally agreed.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 272):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 3.4.2.4.2.7 FirstCollectionAmount <FrstColltnAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount different from the collection amount, as it includes the costs associated with the first debited amount.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 261

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 3.4.2.4.2.8 CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Fixed amount to be collected from the debtor's account.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 261

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 3.4.2.4.2.9 MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Maximum amount that may be collected from the debtor's account, per instruction.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C7 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 261

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**3.4.2.4.2.10 Adjustment <Adjstmnt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the characteristics of the adjustment applied to the collection amount of a direct debit instruction.

**Adjustment <Adjstmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[MandateAdjustment1](#)" on page 237 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAdjustmentRuleIndicator <DtAdjstmntRuleInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		237
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	±		238
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	238
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		238

**3.4.2.4.2.11 Reason <Rsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the reason for the setup of the mandate.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		72
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		72

**3.4.2.4.2.11.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code](#)" on page 266

**3.4.2.4.2.11.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.



Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 275

### 3.4.2.4.2.12 CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Credit party that signs the mandate.

**CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

**3.4.2.4.2.13 Creditor <Cdtr>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Party that signs the mandate and to whom an amount of money is due.**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

**3.4.2.4.2.14 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>***Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

*Impacted by:* C10 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C9 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 219 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		220
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	220
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		221
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		221

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
     /Identification Must be present  
 Or     /Proxy Must be present

#### 3.4.2.4.2.15 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

**CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 3.4.2.4.2.16 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

**UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 3.4.2.4.2.17 Debtor <Dbtr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that signs the mandate and owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 3.4.2.4.2.18 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor, to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

*Impacted by:* C10 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C9 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 219 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		220
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	220
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		221
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		221

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 3.4.2.4.2.19 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

**DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 3.4.2.4.2.20 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.



**UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 3.4.2.4.2.21 MandateReference <MndtRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference assigned by a creditor or ultimate creditor for internal usage for the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

**3.4.2.4.2.22 ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Provides information to identify the underlying documents associated with the mandate.**ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>** contains the following **ReferredMandateDocument2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[0..1]			82
	<b>CodeOrProprietary &lt;CdOrPrtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]			82
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		83
	<b>Issuer &lt;Issr&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		83
	<b>Number &lt;Nb&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		83
	<b>CreditorReference &lt;CdtrRef&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		83
	<b>RelatedDate &lt;RltdDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]			83
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]			84
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		84
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Date		84

**3.4.2.4.2.22.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of referred document.**Type <Tp>** contains the following **DocumentType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>CodeOrProprietary &lt;CdOrPrtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]			82
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		83
	<b>Issuer &lt;Issr&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		83

**3.4.2.4.2.22.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Coded or proprietary format referred document type.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **DocumentType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		83

#### 3.4.2.4.2.22.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of remittance document, as published in an external document type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDocumentType1Code" on page 265

#### 3.4.2.4.2.22.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of remittance document, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 3.4.2.4.2.22.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 3.4.2.4.2.22.2 Number <Nb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 3.4.2.4.2.22.3 CreditorReference <CdtrRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification as assigned by the creditor to the referred document shared with the debtor for its own reference.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 3.4.2.4.2.22.4 RelatedDate <RltdDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and type associated with the referred document.

**RelatedDate <RltdDt>** contains the following **DateAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]			84
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		84
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Date		84

#### 3.4.2.4.2.22.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of date associated with the referred document.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DateType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		84

##### 3.4.2.4.2.22.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date type, as published in an external date type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDateType1Code" on page 264

##### 3.4.2.4.2.22.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

##### 3.4.2.4.2.22.4.2 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 270

#### 3.4.2.5 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C12 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1"](#) on page 243 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		243
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		243

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

### 3.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C12 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1"](#) on page 243 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		243
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		243

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 4 **pain.011.001.08 MandateCancellationRequestV08**

### 4.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

#### Scope

The MandateCancellationRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to his agent. The initiator can either be the debtor or the creditor.

The MandateCancellationRequest message is forwarded by the agent of the initiator to the agent of the counterparty.

A MandateCancellationRequest message is used to request the cancellation of an existing mandate. If accepted, this MandateCancellationRequest message together with the MandateAcceptanceReport message confirming the acceptance will be considered a valid cancellation of an existing mandate, agreed upon by all parties.

#### Usage

The MandateCancellationRequest message can contain one or more request(s) to cancel a specific mandate.

The messages can be exchanged between creditor and creditor agent or debtor and debtor agent and between creditor agent and debtor agent.

The message can also be used by an initiating party that has authority to send the message on behalf of the creditor or debtor.

The MandateCancellationRequest message can be used in domestic and cross-border scenarios.

#### Outline

The MandateCancellationRequestV08 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

##### A. GroupHeader

Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the cancellation of the mandate, but which are not part of the mandate.

##### B. UnderlyingCancellationDetails

Set of elements used to provide details on the cancellation request.

##### C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 4.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <MndtCxlReq>	[1..1]		C11	
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			90
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		90
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		91
	<b>Authorisation</b> <Authstn>	[0..2]	±		91
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		91
	<b>InstructingAgent</b> <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		92
	<b>InstructedAgent</b> <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		93
	<b>UnderlyingCancellationDetails</b> <UndrlygCxlDtls>	[1..*]			94
	<b>OriginalMessageInformation</b> <OrgnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		96
	<b>CancellationReason</b> <CxlRsn>	[1..1]			96
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		97
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[1..1]			98
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		99
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		99
	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]			99
{Or	<b>OriginalMandateIdentification</b> <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		101
Or}	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C13, C14	101
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		103
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		103
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		103
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		103
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		104
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		104
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	105
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	105
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	105
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		106

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			106
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		106
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		106
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		107
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		108
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	108
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		109
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		110
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		111
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	112
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		113
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		114
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		115
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			116
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			116
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			116
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		117
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		117
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		117
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		117
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			117
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			118
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		118
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		118
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	118
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	119



## 4.3 Constraints

### C1 **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C4 **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C5 **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### C6 **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### C7 **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### C8 **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

### C9 **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

### C10 **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C11 SupplementaryDataRule**

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C12 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

**C13 UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

**C14 UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

## 4.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 4.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the cancellation of the mandate, but which are not part of the mandate.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **GroupHeader110** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		90
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		91
	<b>Authorisation</b> <Authstn>	[0..2]	±		91
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		91
	<b>InstructingAgent</b> <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		92
	<b>InstructedAgent</b> <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		93

#### 4.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the instructed party, to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 4.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 270

#### 4.4.1.3 Authorisation <Authstn>

*Presence:* [0..2]

*Definition:* User identification or any user key to be used to check the authority of the initiating party.

*Usage:* The content is not of a technical nature, but reflects the organisational structure at the initiating side. The authorisation element can typically be used in relay scenarios, payment initiations, payment returns or payment reversals that are initiated on behalf of a party different from the initiating party.

**Authorisation <Authstn>** contains one of the following elements (see "Authorisation1Choice" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		242
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		243

#### 4.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that initiates the mandate message.

**InitiatingParty <InitgPty>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 4.4.1.5 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

*Usage Rule:*

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructing agent is the party sending the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that sent the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructing agent is the party sending the acceptance report message and not the party that sent the original mandate request message.

**InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 4.4.1.6 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

Usage Rule:

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructed agent is the party receiving the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that received the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructed agent is the party receiving the acceptance report message and not the party that received the original mandate request message.

**InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 4.4.2 UnderlyingCancellationDetails <UndrlygCxlDtls>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide details on the cancellation request.

**UnderlyingCancellationDetails <UndrlygCxlDtls>** contains the following **MandateCancellation8** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>OriginalMessageInformation</b> <OrgnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		96
	<b>CancellationReason</b> <CxlRsn>	[1..1]			96
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		97
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[1..1]			98
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		99
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		99
	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]			99
{Or	<b>OriginalMandateIdentification</b> <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		101
Or}	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C13, C14	101
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		103
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		103
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		103
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		103
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		104
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		104
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	105
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	105
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	105
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		106
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			106
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		106
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		106
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		107
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		108
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	108
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		109
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		110
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		111
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	112

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		113
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		114
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		115
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			116
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			116
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			116
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		117
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		117
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		117
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		117
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			117
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			118
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		118
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		118
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	118

#### 4.4.2.1 OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on the original message.

**OriginalMessageInformation** <OrgnlMsgInf> contains the following elements (see "OriginalMessageInformation1" on page 241 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		242
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		242
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		242

#### 4.4.2.2 CancellationReason <CxlRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides detailed information on the cancellation reason.



**CancellationReason <CxlRsn>** contains the following **MandateCancellationReason2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		97
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[1..1]			98
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		99
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		99

#### 4.4.2.2.1 Originator <Orgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that issues the cancellation request.

**Originator <Orgtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 4.4.2.2.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the cancellation request.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **MandateReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		99

#### 4.4.2.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalMandateReason1Code" on page 266

#### 4.4.2.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 4.4.2.2.3 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Further details on the cancellation request reason.

*Datatype:* "Max105Text" on page 273

#### 4.4.2.3 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the original mandate data.

**OriginalMandate** <OrgnlMndt> contains one of the following **OriginalMandate10Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>OriginalMandateIdentification</b> <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		101
Or}	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C13, C14	101
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		103
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		103
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		103
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		103
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		104
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <Trckglnd>	[1..1]	Indicator		104
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	105
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	105
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	105
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		106
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			106
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		106
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		106
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmld>	[0..1]	±		107
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		108
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	108
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		109
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		110
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		111
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	112
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		113
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		114
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		115
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			116
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			116
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			116
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		117

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		117
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		117
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		117
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			117
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			118
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		118
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		118

#### 4.4.2.3.1 OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the responsible party (such as the creditor) or agent (such as the debtor agent), to unambiguously identify the original mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 4.4.2.3.2 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the original mandate data.

*Impacted by:* C13 "UltimateCreditorGuideline", C14 "UltimateDebtorGuideline"

**OriginalMandate** <OrgnlMndt> contains the following **Mandate20** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		103
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqlId>	[0..1]	Text		103
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		103
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		103
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		104
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		104
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	105
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	105
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	105
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		106
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			106
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		106
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		106
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		107
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		108
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	108
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		109
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		110
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		111
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	112
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		113
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		114
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		115
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			116
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			116
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			116
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		117
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		117
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		117
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		117

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			117
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			118
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		118
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		118

#### Constraints

- **UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

- **UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

#### 4.4.2.3.2.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the responsible party (such as the creditor) or agent (such as the debtor agent), to unambiguously identify the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 4.4.2.3.2.2 MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification for the mandate request, as assigned by the initiating party.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 4.4.2.3.2.3 Authentication <Authntcn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the transport authentication details related to the mandate.

**Authentication <Authntcn>** contains the following elements (see "[MandateAuthentication1](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageAuthenticationCode <MsgAuthntcnCd>	[0..1]	Text		234
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		235
	Channel <Chanl>	[0..1]			235
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		235
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		235

#### 4.4.2.3.2.4 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following elements (see "MandateTypeInformation2" on page 238 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		239
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		239
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			240
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	Classification <Clssfctn>	[0..1]	±		240

#### 4.4.2.3.2.5 Occurrences <Ocrncs>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the duration of the mandate and occurrence of the underlying transactions.

**Occurrences <Ocrncs>** contains the following elements (see "MandateOccurrences5" on page 235 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		236
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		236
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]			236
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		237
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237

#### 4.4.2.3.2.6 TrackingIndicator <TrckgInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the direct debit instructions should be automatically re-submitted periodically when bilaterally agreed.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 272):



- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 4.4.2.3.2.7 FirstCollectionAmount <FrstColltnAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount different from the collection amount, as it includes the costs associated with the first debited amount.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 261

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.4.2.3.2.8 CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Fixed amount to be collected from the debtor's account.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 261

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 4.4.2.3.2.9 MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Maximum amount that may be collected from the debtor's account, per instruction.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 261

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**4.4.2.3.2.10 Adjustment <Adjstmnt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the characteristics of the adjustment applied to the collection amount of a direct debit instruction.

**Adjustment <Adjstmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[MandateAdjustment1](#)" on page 237 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAdjustmentRuleIndicator <DtAdjstmntRuleInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		237
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	±		238
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	238
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		238

**4.4.2.3.2.11 Reason <Rsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the reason for the setup of the mandate.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		106
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		106

**4.4.2.3.2.11.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code](#)" on page 266

**4.4.2.3.2.11.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 275

#### 4.4.2.3.2.12 CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Credit party that signs the mandate.

**CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

**4.4.2.3.2.13 Creditor <Cdtr>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Party that signs the mandate and to whom an amount of money is due.**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

**4.4.2.3.2.14 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>***Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

*Impacted by:* C10 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C9 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 219 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		220
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	220
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		221
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		221

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
     /Identification Must be present  
   Or     /Proxy Must be present

#### 4.4.2.3.2.15 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

**CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 4.4.2.3.2.16 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

**UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 4.4.2.3.2.17 Debtor <Dbtr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that signs the mandate and owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 4.4.2.3.2.18 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor, to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

*Impacted by:* C10 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C9 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"



**DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 219 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		220
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	220
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		221
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		221

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 4.4.2.3.2.19 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

**DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 4.4.2.3.2.20 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 4.4.2.3.2.21 MandateReference <MndtRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference assigned by a creditor or ultimate creditor for internal usage for the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

**4.4.2.3.2.22 ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Provides information to identify the underlying documents associated with the mandate.**ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>** contains the following **ReferredMandateDocument2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[0..1]			116
	<b>CodeOrProprietary &lt;CdOrPrtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]			116
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		117
	<b>Issuer &lt;Issr&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		117
	<b>Number &lt;Nb&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		117
	<b>CreditorReference &lt;CdtrRef&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		117
	<b>RelatedDate &lt;RltdDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]			117
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]			118
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		118
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Date		118

**4.4.2.3.2.22.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of referred document.**Type <Tp>** contains the following **DocumentType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>CodeOrProprietary &lt;CdOrPrtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]			116
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		117
	<b>Issuer &lt;Issr&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		117

**4.4.2.3.2.22.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Coded or proprietary format referred document type.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **DocumentType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		117

#### 4.4.2.3.2.22.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of remittance document, as published in an external document type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDocumentType1Code" on page 265

#### 4.4.2.3.2.22.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of remittance document, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 4.4.2.3.2.22.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 4.4.2.3.2.22.2 Number <Nb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 4.4.2.3.2.22.3 CreditorReference <CdtrRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification as assigned by the creditor to the referred document shared with the debtor for its own reference.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 4.4.2.3.2.22.4 RelatedDate <RltdDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and type associated with the referred document.

**RelatedDate <RltdDt>** contains the following **DateAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]			118
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		118
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Date		118

#### 4.4.2.3.2.22.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of date associated with the referred document.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DateType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		118

##### 4.4.2.3.2.22.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date type, as published in an external date type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDateType1Code" on page 264

##### 4.4.2.3.2.22.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

##### 4.4.2.3.2.22.4.2 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 270

#### 4.4.2.4 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C12 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 243 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		243
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		243

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

### 4.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C12 "[SupplementaryDataRule](#)"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 243 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		243
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		243

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

# 5 **pain.012.001.08 MandateAcceptanceReportV08**

## 5.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

### Scope

The MandateAcceptanceReport message is sent from the agent of the receiver (debtor or creditor) of the MandateRequest message (initiation, amendment or cancellation) to the agent of the initiator of the MandateRequest message (debtor or creditor).

A MandateAcceptanceReport message is used to confirm the acceptance or rejection of a MandateRequest message. Where acceptance is part of the full process flow, a MandateRequest message only becomes valid after a confirmation of acceptance is received through a MandateAcceptanceReport message from the agent of the receiver.

### Usage

The MandateAcceptanceReport message can contain one or more confirmation(s) of acceptance or rejection of a specific Mandate Request.

The messages can be exchanged between debtor agent and creditor agent and between debtor agent and debtor and creditor agent and creditor.

The MandateAcceptanceReport message can be used in domestic and cross-border scenarios.

### Outline

The MandateAcceptanceReportV08 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

#### A. GroupHeader

Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the mandate acceptance, but which are not part of the mandate.

#### B. UnderlyingAcceptanceDetails

Provides information on the acceptance or rejection of the mandate request.

#### C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.



## 5.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <MndtAcptncRpt>	[1..1]		C12	
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			124
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		124
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		125
	<b>Authorisation</b> <Authstn>	[0..2]	±		125
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		125
	<b>InstructingAgent</b> <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		126
	<b>InstructedAgent</b> <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		127
	<b>UnderlyingAcceptanceDetails</b> <UndrlygAcptncDtls>	[1..*]		C11	128
	<b>OriginalMessageInformation</b> <OrgnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		130
	<b>AcceptanceResult</b> <AcptncRslt>	[1..1]			131
	<b>Accepted</b> <Acptd>	[1..1]	Indicator		131
	<b>RejectReason</b> <RjctRsn>	[0..1]			131
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		131
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		132
	<b>AdditionalRejectReasonInformation</b> <AddtlRjctRsnInf>	[0..*]	Text		132
	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[0..1]			132
{Or	<b>OriginalMandateIdentification</b> <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		134
Or}	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C14, C15	134
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		136
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		136
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		136
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		136
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		137
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		137
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	138
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	138
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	138
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		139

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			139
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		140
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		141
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	141
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		142
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		143
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		144
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	145
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		146
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		147
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		148
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			149
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			149
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			149
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		150
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		150
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		150
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		150
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		150
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			150
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			151
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		151
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		151
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		151
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C13	151
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C13	152

## 5.3 Constraints

### C1 **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C4 **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C5 **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### C6 **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### C7 **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### C8 **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

### C9 **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

### C10 **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C11 OriginalMandateIdentificationPresenceRule**

When AcceptanceResults/Accepted is "true" then OriginalMandate/  
OriginalMandateIdentification must be present or OriginalMandate/OriginalMandate/  
OriginalMandateIdentification must be present.

**C12 SupplementaryDataRule**

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C13 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

**C14 UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

**C15 UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

## 5.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 5.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the mandate acceptance, but which are not part of the mandate.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **GroupHeader110** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		124
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		125
	<b>Authorisation</b> <Authstn>	[0..2]	±		125
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		125
	<b>InstructingAgent</b> <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		126
	<b>InstructedAgent</b> <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		127

#### 5.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the instructed party, to unambiguously identify the message.

Usage: The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

Datatype: "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 5.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: "ISODateTime" on page 270

#### 5.4.1.3 Authorisation <Authstn>

Presence: [0..2]

Definition: User identification or any user key to be used to check the authority of the initiating party.

Usage: The content is not of a technical nature, but reflects the organisational structure at the initiating side. The authorisation element can typically be used in relay scenarios, payment initiations, payment returns or payment reversals that are initiated on behalf of a party different from the initiating party.

**Authorisation <Authstn>** contains one of the following elements (see "Authorisation1Choice" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		242
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		243

#### 5.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that initiates the mandate message.

**InitiatingParty <InitgPty>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 5.4.1.5 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

*Usage Rule:*

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructing agent is the party sending the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that sent the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructing agent is the party sending the acceptance report message and not the party that sent the original mandate request message.

**InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 5.4.1.6 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

Usage Rule:

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructed agent is the party receiving the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that received the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructed agent is the party receiving the acceptance report message and not the party that received the original mandate request message.

**InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

## 5.4.2 UnderlyingAcceptanceDetails <UndrlygAcceptncDtls>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Provides information on the acceptance or rejection of the mandate request.

*Impacted by:* C11 "OriginalMandateIdentificationPresenceRule"



**UnderlyingAcceptanceDetails <UndrlygAcptncDtls>** contains the following **MandateAcceptance8** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>OriginalMessageInformation</b> <OrgnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		130
	<b>AcceptanceResult</b> <AcptncRslt>	[1..1]			131
	<b>Accepted</b> <Acptd>	[1..1]	Indicator		131
	<b>RejectReason</b> <RjctRsn>	[0..1]			131
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		131
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		132
	<b>AdditionalRejectReasonInformation</b> <AddtlRjctRsnInf>	[0..*]	Text		132
	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[0..1]			132
{Or	<b>OriginalMandateIdentification</b> <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		134
Or}	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C14, C15	134
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		136
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		136
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		136
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		136
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		137
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		137
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	138
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	138
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	138
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		139
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			139
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		140
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		141
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	141
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		142
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		143
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		144

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	145
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		146
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		147
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		148
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			149
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			149
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			149
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		150
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		150
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		150
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		150
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		150
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			150
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			151
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		151
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		151
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		151
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C13	151

### Constraints

- **OriginalMandateIdentificationPresenceRule**

When AcceptanceResults/Accepted is "true" then OriginalMandate/OriginalMandateIdentification must be present or OriginalMandate/OriginalMandate/OriginalMandateIdentification must be present.

On Condition

/AcceptanceResult/Accepted is different from value 'true'

Following Must be True

/OriginalMandate/OriginalMandateIdentification Must be present

Or /OriginalMandate/OriginalMandate/MandateIdentification Must be present

#### 5.4.2.1 OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on the original message.

**OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>** contains the following elements (see "OriginalMessageInformation1" on page 241 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		242
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		242
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		242

#### 5.4.2.2 AcceptanceResult <AccptncRslt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides detailed information on the acceptance result.

**AcceptanceResult <AccptncRslt>** contains the following **AcceptanceResult6** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Accepted</b> <Accptd>	[1..1]	Indicator		131
	<b>RejectReason</b> <RjctRsn>	[0..1]			131
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		131
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		132
	<b>AdditionalRejectReasonInformation</b> <AddtlRjctRsnInf>	[0..*]	Text		132

##### 5.4.2.2.1 Accepted <Accptd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Indicates whether the mandate request was accepted or rejected.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "YesNoIndicator" on page 272):

- *Meaning When True:* Yes
- *Meaning When False:* No

##### 5.4.2.2.2 RejectReason <RjctRsn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the rejection of a mandate request.

**RejectReason <RjctRsn>** contains one of the following **MandateReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		131
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		132

##### 5.4.2.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalMandateReason1Code" on page 266

#### **5.4.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### **5.4.2.2.3 AdditionalRejectReasonInformation <AddtlRjctRsnInf>**

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Further details on the reject reason.

*Datatype:* "Max105Text" on page 273

#### **5.4.2.3 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the original mandate data.

**OriginalMandate** <OrgnlMndt> contains one of the following **OriginalMandate11Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>OriginalMandateIdentification</b> <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		134
Or}	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C14, C15	134
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		136
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		136
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		136
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		136
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		137
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		137
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	138
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	138
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	138
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		139
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			139
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmId>	[0..1]	±		140
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		141
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	141
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		142
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		143
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		144
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	145
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		146
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		147
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		148
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			149
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			149
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			149
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		150
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		150

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Issuer</b> </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		150
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		150
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		150
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			150
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			151
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		151
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		151
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		151

#### 5.4.2.3.1 OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the responsible party (such as the creditor) or agent (such as the debtor agent), to unambiguously identify the original mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 5.4.2.3.2 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the original mandate data.

*Impacted by:* C14 "UltimateCreditorGuideline", C15 "UltimateDebtorGuideline"

**OriginalMandate** <OrgnlMndt> contains the following **Mandate22** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		136
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqlId>	[0..1]	Text		136
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		136
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		136
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		137
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		137
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	138
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	138
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	138
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		139
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			139
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		140
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		141
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	141
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		142
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		143
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		144
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	145
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		146
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		147
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		148
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			149
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			149
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			149
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		150
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		150
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		150
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		150
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		150

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			150
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			151
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		151
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		151
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		151

#### Constraints

- **UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

- **UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

#### 5.4.2.3.2.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the responsible party (such as the creditor) or agent (such as the debtor agent), to unambiguously identify the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 5.4.2.3.2.2 MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification for the mandate request, as assigned by the initiating party.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 5.4.2.3.2.3 Authentication <Authntcn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the transport authentication details related to the mandate.

**Authentication <Authntcn>** contains the following elements (see "[MandateAuthentication1](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageAuthenticationCode <MsgAuthntcnCd>	[0..1]	Text		234
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		235
	Channel <Chanl>	[0..1]			235
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		235
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		235

#### 5.4.2.3.2.4 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]



*Definition:* Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following elements (see "MandateTypeInformation2" on page 238 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		239
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		239
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			240
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	Classification <Clsfctn>	[0..1]	±		240

#### 5.4.2.3.2.5 Occurrences <Ocrncs>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the duration of the mandate and occurrence of the underlying transactions.

**Occurrences <Ocrncs>** contains the following elements (see "MandateOccurrences5" on page 235 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		236
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		236
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]			236
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		237
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237

#### 5.4.2.3.2.6 TrackingIndicator <TrckgInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the direct debit instructions should be automatically re-submitted periodically when bilaterally agreed.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 272):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 5.4.2.3.2.7 FirstCollectionAmount <FrstColltnAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount different from the collection amount, as it includes the costs associated with the first debited amount.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 261

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 5.4.2.3.2.8 CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Fixed amount to be collected from the debtor's account.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 261

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 5.4.2.3.2.9 MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Maximum amount that may be collected from the debtor's account, per instruction.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 261

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**5.4.2.3.2.10 Adjustment <Adjstmnt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the characteristics of the adjustment applied to the collection amount of a direct debit instruction.

**Adjustment <Adjstmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[MandateAdjustment1](#)" on page 237 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAdjustmentRuleIndicator <DtAdjstmntRuleInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		237
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	±		238
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	238
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		238

**5.4.2.3.2.11 Reason <Rsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the reason for the setup of the mandate.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139

**5.4.2.3.2.11.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code](#)" on page 266

**5.4.2.3.2.11.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 275

#### 5.4.2.3.2.12 CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Credit party that signs the mandate.

**CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

**5.4.2.3.2.13 Creditor <Cdtr>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Party that signs the mandate and to whom an amount of money is due.**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

**5.4.2.3.2.14 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>***Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

*Impacted by:* C10 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C9 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 219 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		220
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	220
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		221
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		221

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
     /Identification Must be present  
   Or     /Proxy Must be present

#### 5.4.2.3.2.15 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

**CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 5.4.2.3.2.16 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

**UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 5.4.2.3.2.17 Debtor <Dbtr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that signs the mandate and owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.



**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 5.4.2.3.2.18 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor, to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

*Impacted by:* C10 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C9 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 219 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		220
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	220
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		221
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		221

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 5.4.2.3.2.19 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

**DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 5.4.2.3.2.20 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 5.4.2.3.2.21 MandateReference <MndtRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference assigned by a creditor or ultimate creditor for internal usage for the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

**5.4.2.3.2.22 ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Provides information to identify the underlying documents associated with the mandate.**ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>** contains the following **ReferredMandateDocument2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[0..1]			149
	<b>CodeOrProprietary &lt;CdOrPrtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]			149
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		150
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		150
	<b>Issuer &lt;Issr&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		150
	<b>Number &lt;Nb&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		150
	<b>CreditorReference &lt;CdtrRef&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		150
	<b>RelatedDate &lt;RltdDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]			150
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]			151
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		151
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		151
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Date		151

**5.4.2.3.2.22.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of referred document.**Type <Tp>** contains the following **DocumentType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>CodeOrProprietary &lt;CdOrPrtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]			149
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		150
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		150
	<b>Issuer &lt;Issr&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		150

**5.4.2.3.2.22.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Coded or proprietary format referred document type.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **DocumentType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		150
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		150

#### 5.4.2.3.2.22.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of remittance document, as published in an external document type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDocumentType1Code" on page 265

#### 5.4.2.3.2.22.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of remittance document, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 5.4.2.3.2.22.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 5.4.2.3.2.22.2 Number <Nb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 5.4.2.3.2.22.3 CreditorReference <CdtrRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification as assigned by the creditor to the referred document shared with the debtor for its own reference.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 5.4.2.3.2.22.4 RelatedDate <RltdDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and type associated with the referred document.

**RelatedDate <RltdDt>** contains the following **DateAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]			151
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		151
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		151
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Date		151

#### 5.4.2.3.2.22.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of date associated with the referred document.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DateType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		151
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		151

##### 5.4.2.3.2.22.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date type, as published in an external date type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDateType1Code" on page 264

##### 5.4.2.3.2.22.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

##### 5.4.2.3.2.22.4.2 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 270

#### 5.4.2.4 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C13 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 243 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		243
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		243

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

### 5.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C13 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "[SupplementaryData1](#)" on page 243 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		243
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		243

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.



## 6 **pain.017.001.04** **MandateCopyRequestV04**

### 6.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

#### Scope

The MandateCopyRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to his agent. The initiator can either be the debtor or the creditor.

The MandateCopyRequest message is forwarded by the agent of the initiator to the agent of the counterparty.

A MandateCopyRequest message is used to request a copy of an existing mandate. If accepted, the mandate copy can be sent using the MandateAcceptanceReport message.

#### Usage

The MandateCopyRequest message can contain one or more copy requests.

The messages can be exchanged between creditor and creditor agent or debtor and debtor agent and between creditor agent and debtor agent.

The message can also be used by an initiating party that has authority to send the message on behalf of the creditor or debtor.

The MandateCopyRequest message can be used in domestic and cross-border scenarios.

#### Outline

The MandateCopyRequestV04 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

##### A. GroupHeader

Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the mandate copy request, but which are not part of the mandate.

##### B. UnderlyingCopyRequestDetails

Set of information used to identify the mandate for which a copy is requested.

##### C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 6.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <MndtCpyReq>	[1..1]		C11	
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			157
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		157
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		157
	<b>Authorisation</b> <Authstn>	[0..2]	±		157
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		158
	<b>InstructingAgent</b> <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		159
	<b>InstructedAgent</b> <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		160
	<b>UnderlyingCopyRequestDetails</b> <UndrlygCpyReqDtls>	[1..*]			161
	<b>OriginalMessageInformation</b> <OrgnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		163
	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]			163
{Or	<b>OriginalMandateIdentification</b> <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		165
Or}	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C13, C14	165
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		167
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		167
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		167
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		167
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		168
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		168
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		170
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			170
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		170
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		170
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		171
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		172
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	172

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		173
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		174
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		175
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	176
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		177
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		178
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		179
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			180
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			180
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			180
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		181
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		181
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		181
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		181
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		181
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			181
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			182
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		182
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		182
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		182
	<b>MandateStatus</b> <MndtSts>	[0..1]			182
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		183
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		183
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	183
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	183

## 6.3 Constraints

### C1 ActiveCurrency

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**C3 AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C4 BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**C5 Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**C6 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C7 CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**C8 IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**C9 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

**C10 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C11 SupplementaryDataRule**

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C12 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

**C13 UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

**C14 UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

## 6.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 6.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the mandate copy request, but which are not part of the mandate.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **GroupHeader110** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		157
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		157
	<b>Authorisation</b> <Authstn>	[0..2]	±		157
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		158
	<b>InstructingAgent</b> <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		159
	<b>InstructedAgent</b> <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		160

#### 6.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the instructed party, to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 6.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 270

#### 6.4.1.3 Authorisation <Authstn>

*Presence:* [0..2]

*Definition:* User identification or any user key to be used to check the authority of the initiating party.

Usage: The content is not of a technical nature, but reflects the organisational structure at the initiating side. The authorisation element can typically be used in relay scenarios, payment initiations, payment returns or payment reversals that are initiated on behalf of a party different from the initiating party.

**Authorisation <Authstn>** contains one of the following elements (see "Authorisation1Choice" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		242
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		243

#### 6.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that initiates the mandate message.

**InitiatingParty <InitgPty>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 6.4.1.5 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

*Usage Rule:*

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructing agent is the party sending the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that sent the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructing agent is the party sending the acceptance report message and not the party that sent the original mandate request message.

**InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 6.4.1.6 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

Usage Rule:

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructed agent is the party receiving the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that received the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructed agent is the party receiving the acceptance report message and not the party that received the original mandate request message.



**InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

## 6.4.2 UnderlyingCopyRequestDetails <UndrlygCpyReqDtls>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Set of information used to identify the mandate for which a copy is requested.

**UnderlyingCopyRequestDetails** <UndrlygCpyReqDtls> contains the following **MandateCopy4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>OriginalMessageInformation</b> <OrgnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		163
	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]			163
{Or	<b>OriginalMandateIdentification</b> <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		165
Or}	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C13, C14	165
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		167
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		167
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		167
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		167
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		168
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		168
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		170
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			170
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		170
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		170
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		171
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		172
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	172
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		173
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		174
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		175
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	176
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		177
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		178
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		179
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			180
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			180
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			180

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		181
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		181
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		181
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		181
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		181
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			181
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			182
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		182
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		182
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		182
	<b>MandateStatus</b> <MndtSts>	[0..1]			182
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		183
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		183
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	183

#### 6.4.2.1 OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on the original message.

**OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>** contains the following elements (see "OriginalMessageInformation1" on page 241 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		242
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		242
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		242

#### 6.4.2.2 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the original mandate data.

**OriginalMandate** <OrgnlMndt> contains one of the following **OriginalMandate10Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>OriginalMandateIdentification</b> <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		165
Or}	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C13, C14	165
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		167
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		167
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		167
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		167
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		168
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <Trckglnd>	[1..1]	Indicator		168
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		170
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			170
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		170
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		170
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmId>	[0..1]	±		171
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		172
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	172
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		173
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		174
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		175
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	176
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		177
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		178
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		179
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			180
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			180
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			180
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		181
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		181

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Issuer</b> </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		181
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		181
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		181
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			181
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			182
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		182
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		182
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		182

#### 6.4.2.2.1 OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the responsible party (such as the creditor) or agent (such as the debtor agent), to unambiguously identify the original mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 6.4.2.2.2 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the original mandate data.

*Impacted by:* C13 "UltimateCreditorGuideline", C14 "UltimateDebtorGuideline"

**OriginalMandate** <OrgnlMndt> contains the following **Mandate20** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		167
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqlId>	[0..1]	Text		167
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		167
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		167
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		168
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		168
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	169
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		170
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			170
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		170
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		170
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		171
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		172
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	172
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		173
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		174
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		175
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	176
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		177
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		178
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		179
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			180
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			180
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			180
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		181
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		181
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		181
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		181
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		181

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			181
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			182
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		182
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		182
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		182

#### Constraints

- **UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

- **UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

#### 6.4.2.2.2.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the responsible party (such as the creditor) or agent (such as the debtor agent), to unambiguously identify the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 6.4.2.2.2.2 MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification for the mandate request, as assigned by the initiating party.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 6.4.2.2.2.3 Authentication <Authntcn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the transport authentication details related to the mandate.

**Authentication <Authntcn>** contains the following elements (see "[MandateAuthentication1](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageAuthenticationCode <MsgAuthntcnCd>	[0..1]	Text		234
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		235
	Channel <Chanl>	[0..1]			235
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		235
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		235

#### 6.4.2.2.2.4 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following elements (see "MandateTypeInfoInformation2" on page 238 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		239
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		239
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			240
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	Classification <Clsfctn>	[0..1]	±		240

#### 6.4.2.2.2.5 Occurrences <Ocrncs>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the duration of the mandate and occurrence of the underlying transactions.

**Occurrences <Ocrncs>** contains the following elements (see "MandateOccurrences5" on page 235 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		236
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		236
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]			236
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		237
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237

#### 6.4.2.2.2.6 TrackingIndicator <TrckgInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the direct debit instructions should be automatically re-submitted periodically when bilaterally agreed.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 272):



- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 6.4.2.2.2.7 FirstCollectionAmount <FrstColltnAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount different from the collection amount, as it includes the costs associated with the first debited amount.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 261

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.4.2.2.2.8 CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Fixed amount to be collected from the debtor's account.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 261

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 6.4.2.2.2.9 MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Maximum amount that may be collected from the debtor's account, per instruction.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 261

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**6.4.2.2.2.10 Adjustment <Adjstmnt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the characteristics of the adjustment applied to the collection amount of a direct debit instruction.

**Adjustment <Adjstmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[MandateAdjustment1](#)" on page 237 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAdjustmentRuleIndicator <DtAdjstmntRuleInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		237
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	±		238
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	238
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		238

**6.4.2.2.2.11 Reason <Rsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the reason for the setup of the mandate.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		170
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		170

**6.4.2.2.2.11.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code](#)" on page 266

**6.4.2.2.2.11.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 275

#### 6.4.2.2.2.12 CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Credit party that signs the mandate.

**CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

**6.4.2.2.2.13 Creditor <Cdtr>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Party that signs the mandate and to whom an amount of money is due.**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

**6.4.2.2.2.14 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>***Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

*Impacted by:* C10 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C9 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 219 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		220
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	220
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		221
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		221

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
     /Identification Must be present  
   Or     /Proxy Must be present

#### 6.4.2.2.2.15 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

**CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 6.4.2.2.2.16 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

**UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 6.4.2.2.2.17 Debtor <Dbtr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that signs the mandate and owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 6.4.2.2.18 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor, to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

*Impacted by:* C10 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C9 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"



**DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 219 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		220
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	220
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		221
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		221

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
    /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 6.4.2.2.2.19 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

**DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 6.4.2.2.2.20 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 6.4.2.2.2.21 MandateReference <MndtRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference assigned by a creditor or ultimate creditor for internal usage for the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

**6.4.2.2.2.22 ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Provides information to identify the underlying documents associated with the mandate.**ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>** contains the following **ReferredMandateDocument2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[0..1]			180
	<b>CodeOrProprietary &lt;CdOrPrtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]			180
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		181
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		181
	<b>Issuer &lt;Issr&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		181
	<b>Number &lt;Nb&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		181
	<b>CreditorReference &lt;CdtrRef&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		181
	<b>RelatedDate &lt;RltdDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]			181
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]			182
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		182
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		182
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Date		182

**6.4.2.2.2.22.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of referred document.**Type <Tp>** contains the following **DocumentType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>CodeOrProprietary &lt;CdOrPrtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]			180
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		181
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		181
	<b>Issuer &lt;Issr&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		181

**6.4.2.2.2.22.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Coded or proprietary format referred document type.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **DocumentType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		181
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		181

#### 6.4.2.2.2.2.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of remittance document, as published in an external document type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDocumentType1Code" on page 265

#### 6.4.2.2.2.2.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of remittance document, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 6.4.2.2.2.2.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 6.4.2.2.2.2.2 Number <Nb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 6.4.2.2.2.2.3 CreditorReference <CdtrRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification as assigned by the creditor to the referred document shared with the debtor for its own reference.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 6.4.2.2.2.2.4 RelatedDate <RltdDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and type associated with the referred document.

**RelatedDate <RltdDt>** contains the following **DateAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]			182
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		182
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		182
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Date		182

#### 6.4.2.2.22.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of date associated with the referred document.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DateType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		182
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		182

##### 6.4.2.2.22.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date type, as published in an external date type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDateType1Code" on page 264

##### 6.4.2.2.22.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

##### 6.4.2.2.22.4.2 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 270

#### 6.4.2.3 MandateStatus <MndtSts>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Indicates the status of the mandate.

**MandateStatus <MndtSts>** contains one of the following **MandateStatus1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		183
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		183

**6.4.2.3.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Status of the mandate, in a coded form as published in an external list.*Datatype:* "ExternalMandateStatus1Code" on page 266**6.4.2.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275**6.4.2.4 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.*Impacted by:* C12 "SupplementaryDataRule"**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 243 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		243
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		243

**Constraints**

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

**6.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.*Impacted by:* C12 "SupplementaryDataRule"**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see "SupplementaryData1" on page 243 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		243
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		243

**Constraints**

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.



# 7 **pain.018.001.04 MandateSuspensionRequestV04**

## 7.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

### Scope

The MandateSuspensionRequest message is sent by the initiator of the request to its agent. The initiator can either be the debtor, debtor agent, creditor or creditor agent.

A MandateSuspensionRequest message is used to request the suspension of an existing mandate until the suspension is lifted.

### Usage

The MandateSuspensionRequest message can contain one or more suspension requests.

The messages can be exchanged between creditor and creditor agent or debtor and debtor agent and between creditor agent and debtor agent.

The MandateSuspensionRequest message can be used in domestic and cross-border scenarios.

### Outline

The MandateSuspensionRequestV04 MessageDefinition is composed of 3 MessageBuildingBlocks:

#### A. GroupHeader

Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the mandate suspension request, but which are not part of the mandate.

#### B. UnderlyingSuspensionDetails

Set of elements used to provide information on the suspension request of the mandate.

#### C. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

## 7.2 Structure

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Message root <Document> <MndtSspnsnReq>	[1..1]		C11	
	<b>GroupHeader</b> <GrpHdr>	[1..1]			189
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		189
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190
	<b>Authorisation</b> <Authstn>	[0..2]	±		190
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		190
	<b>InstructingAgent</b> <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		191
	<b>InstructedAgent</b> <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		192
	<b>UnderlyingSuspensionDetails</b> <UndrlygSspnsnDtls>	[1..*]			193
	<b>SuspensionRequestIdentification</b> <SspnsnReqId>	[1..1]	Text		195
	<b>OriginalMessageInformation</b> <OrgnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		195
	<b>SuspensionReason</b> <SspnsnRsn>	[1..1]			196
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		196
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[1..1]			197
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		198
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		198
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		198
	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]			198
{Or	<b>OriginalMandateIdentification</b> <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		200
Or}	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C13, C14	200
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		202
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		202
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		202
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		202
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		203
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		203
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	204
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	204
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	204

Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		205
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			205
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		205
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		205
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		206
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		207
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	207
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		208
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		209
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		210
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	211
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		212
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		213
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		214
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			215
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			215
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			215
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		216
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		216
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		216
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		216
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		216
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			216
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			217
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		217
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		217
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		217
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	217
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	218

## 7.3 Constraints

### C1 **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C2 **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

### C3 **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C4 **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

### C5 **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### C6 **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### C7 **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

### C8 **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

### C9 **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

### C10 **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

**C11 SupplementaryDataRule**

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

*This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.*

**C12 SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

**C13 UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

**C14 UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

## 7.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

### 7.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Set of characteristics to identify the message and parties playing a role in the mandate suspension request, but which are not part of the mandate.

**GroupHeader <GrpHdr>** contains the following **GroupHeader110** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MessageIdentification</b> <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		189
	<b>CreationDateTime</b> <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		190
	<b>Authorisation</b> <Authstn>	[0..2]	±		190
	<b>InitiatingParty</b> <InitgPty>	[0..1]	±		190
	<b>InstructingAgent</b> <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		191
	<b>InstructedAgent</b> <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		192

#### 7.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the instructed party, to unambiguously identify the message.

*Usage:* The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

### 7.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 270

### 7.4.1.3 Authorisation <Authstn>

*Presence:* [0..2]

*Definition:* User identification or any user key to be used to check the authority of the initiating party.

*Usage:* The content is not of a technical nature, but reflects the organisational structure at the initiating side. The authorisation element can typically be used in relay scenarios, payment initiations, payment returns or payment reversals that are initiated on behalf of a party different from the initiating party.

**Authorisation <Authstn>** contains one of the following elements (see "Authorisation1Choice" on page 242 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		242
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		243

### 7.4.1.4 InitiatingParty <InitgPty>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that initiates the mandate message.

**InitiatingParty <InitgPty>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 7.4.1.5 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

*Usage Rule:*

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructing agent is the party sending the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that sent the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructing agent is the party sending the acceptance report message and not the party that sent the original mandate request message.

**InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 7.4.1.6 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out an instruction.

Usage Rule:

In case of amendment and cancellation request messages, the instructed agent is the party receiving the amendment and cancellation request message and not the party that received the original mandate initiation request message.

In case of acceptance report message, the instructed agent is the party receiving the acceptance report message and not the party that received the original mandate request message.



**InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbId>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

## 7.4.2 UnderlyingSuspensionDetails <UndrlygSspnsnDtls>

*Presence:* [1..\*]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide information on the suspension request of the mandate.

**UnderlyingSuspensionDetails** <UndrlygSspnsnDtls> contains the following **MandateSuspension4** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>SuspensionRequestIdentification</b> <SspnsnReqId>	[1..1]	Text		195
	<b>OriginalMessageInformation</b> <OrgnlMsgInf>	[0..1]	±		195
	<b>SuspensionReason</b> <SspnsnRsn>	[1..1]			196
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		196
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[1..1]			197
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		198
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		198
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		198
	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]			198
{Or	<b>OriginalMandateIdentification</b> <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		200
Or}	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C13, C14	200
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		202
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		202
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		202
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		202
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		203
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <Trckglnd>	[1..1]	Indicator		203
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	204
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	204
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	204
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		205
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			205
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		205
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		205
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		206
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		207
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	207
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		208
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		209
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		210

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	211
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		212
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		213
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		214
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			215
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			215
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			215
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		216
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		216
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		216
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		216
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		216
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			216
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			217
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		217
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		217
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		217
	<b>SupplementaryData</b> <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C12	217

#### 7.4.2.1 SuspensionRequestIdentification <SspnsnReqlId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the initiating party, to unambiguously identify the suspension request.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 7.4.2.2 OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides information on the original message.

**OriginalMessageInformation <OrgnlMsgInf>** contains the following elements (see "OriginalMessageInformation1" on page 241 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		242
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		242
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		242

### 7.4.2.3 SuspensionReason <SspnsnRsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides detailed information on the suspension reason.

**SuspensionReason <SspnsnRsn>** contains the following **MandateSuspensionReason3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Originator</b> <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		196
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[1..1]			197
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		198
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		198
	<b>AdditionalInformation</b> <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		198

#### 7.4.2.3.1 Originator <Orgtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Party that issues the suspension request.

**Originator <Orgtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 7.4.2.3.2 Reason <Rsn>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the suspension request.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **MandateSuspensionReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		198
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		198

#### 7.4.2.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalMandateSuspensionReason1Code" on page 266

#### 7.4.2.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 7.4.2.3.3 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Further details on the suspension request reason.

*Datatype:* "Max105Text" on page 273

#### 7.4.2.4 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the original mandate data.

**OriginalMandate** <OrgnlMndt> contains one of the following **OriginalMandate10Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>OriginalMandateIdentification</b> <OrgnlMndtId>	[1..1]	Text		200
Or}	<b>OriginalMandate</b> <OrgnlMndt>	[1..1]		C13, C14	200
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		202
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqId>	[0..1]	Text		202
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		202
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		202
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		203
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <Trckglnd>	[1..1]	Indicator		203
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	204
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	204
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	204
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		205
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			205
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		205
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		205
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		206
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		207
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	207
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		208
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		209
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		210
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	211
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		212
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		213
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		214
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			215
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			215
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			215
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		216
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		216

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Issuer</b> </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		216
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		216
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		216
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			216
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			217
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		217
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		217
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		217

#### 7.4.2.4.1 OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the responsible party (such as the creditor) or agent (such as the debtor agent), to unambiguously identify the original mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 7.4.2.4.2 OriginalMandate <OrgnlMndt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Provides the original mandate data.

*Impacted by:* C13 "UltimateCreditorGuideline", C14 "UltimateDebtorGuideline"



**OriginalMandate** <OrgnlMndt> contains the following **Mandate20** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>MandateIdentification</b> <MndtId>	[1..1]	Text		202
	<b>MandateRequestIdentification</b> <MndtReqlId>	[0..1]	Text		202
	<b>Authentication</b> <Authntcn>	[0..1]	±		202
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]	±		202
	<b>Occurrences</b> <Ocrncs>	[0..1]	±		203
	<b>TrackingIndicator</b> <TrckgInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		203
	<b>FirstCollectionAmount</b> <FrstColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	204
	<b>CollectionAmount</b> <ColltnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	204
	<b>MaximumAmount</b> <MaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	C2, C6	204
	<b>Adjustment</b> <Adjstmnt>	[0..1]	±		205
	<b>Reason</b> <Rsn>	[0..1]			205
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		205
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		205
	<b>CreditorSchemeIdentification</b> <CdtrSchmId>	[0..1]	±		206
	<b>Creditor</b> <Cdtr>	[1..1]	±		207
	<b>CreditorAccount</b> <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	207
	<b>CreditorAgent</b> <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		208
	<b>UltimateCreditor</b> <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]	±		209
	<b>Debtor</b> <Dbtr>	[1..1]	±		210
	<b>DebtorAccount</b> <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	C10, C9	211
	<b>DebtorAgent</b> <DbtrAgt>	[1..1]	±		212
	<b>UltimateDebtor</b> <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		213
	<b>MandateReference</b> <MndtRef>	[0..1]	Text		214
	<b>ReferredDocument</b> <RfrdDoc>	[0..*]			215
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[0..1]			215
	<b>CodeOrProprietary</b> <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			215
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		216
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		216
	<b>Issuer</b> <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		216
	<b>Number</b> <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		216
	<b>CreditorReference</b> <CdtrRef>	[0..1]	Text		216

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>RelatedDate</b> <RltdDt>	[0..1]			216
	<b>Type</b> <Tp>	[1..1]			217
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		217
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		217
	<b>Date</b> <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		217

#### Constraints

- **UltimateCreditorGuideline**

UltimateCreditor may only be present if different from Creditor.

- **UltimateDebtorGuideline**

UltimateDebtor may only be present if different from Debtor.

#### 7.4.2.4.2.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the responsible party (such as the creditor) or agent (such as the debtor agent), to unambiguously identify the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 7.4.2.4.2.2 MandateRequestIdentification <MndtReqId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification for the mandate request, as assigned by the initiating party.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 7.4.2.4.2.3 Authentication <Authntcn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the transport authentication details related to the mandate.

**Authentication <Authntcn>** contains the following elements (see "[MandateAuthentication1](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageAuthenticationCode <MsgAuthntcnCd>	[0..1]	Text		234
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		235
	Channel <Chanl>	[0..1]			235
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		235
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		235

#### 7.4.2.4.2.4 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

**Type <Tp>** contains the following elements (see "MandateTypeInformation2" on page 238 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		239
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		239
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			240
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	Classification <Clssfctn>	[0..1]	±		240

#### 7.4.2.4.2.5 Occurrences <Ocrncs>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides details of the duration of the mandate and occurrence of the underlying transactions.

**Occurrences <Ocrncs>** contains the following elements (see "MandateOccurrences5" on page 235 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		236
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		236
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]			236
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		237
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237

#### 7.4.2.4.2.6 TrackingIndicator <TrckgInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether the direct debit instructions should be automatically re-submitted periodically when bilaterally agreed.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 272):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 7.4.2.4.2.7 FirstCollectionAmount <FrstColltnAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Amount different from the collection amount, as it includes the costs associated with the first debited amount.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 261

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 7.4.2.4.2.8 CollectionAmount <ColltnAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Fixed amount to be collected from the debtor's account.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 261

##### Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 7.4.2.4.2.9 MaximumAmount <MaxAmt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Maximum amount that may be collected from the debtor's account, per instruction.

*Impacted by:* C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency", C6 "CurrencyAmount"

*Datatype:* "ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount" on page 261

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**7.4.2.4.2.10 Adjustment <Adjstmnt>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the characteristics of the adjustment applied to the collection amount of a direct debit instruction.

**Adjustment <Adjstmnt>** contains the following elements (see "[MandateAdjustment1](#)" on page 237 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAdjustmentRuleIndicator <DtAdjstmntRuleInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		237
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	±		238
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	238
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		238

**7.4.2.4.2.11 Reason <Rsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Provides the reason for the setup of the mandate.

**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code</b> <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		205
Or}	<b>Proprietary</b> <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		205

**7.4.2.4.2.11.1 Code <Cd>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

*Datatype:* "[ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code](#)" on page 266

**7.4.2.4.2.11.2 Proprietary <Prtry>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: "Max70Text" on page 275

#### 7.4.2.4.2.12 CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Credit party that signs the mandate.

**CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

**7.4.2.4.2.13 Creditor <Cdtr>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Party that signs the mandate and to whom an amount of money is due.**Creditor <Cdtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

**7.4.2.4.2.14 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>***Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

*Impacted by:* C10 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C9 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 219 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		220
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	220
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		221
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		221

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
     /Identification Must be present  
     Or     /Proxy Must be present

#### 7.4.2.4.2.15 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.



**CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 7.4.2.4.2.16 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

**UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 7.4.2.4.2.17 Debtor <Dbtr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Party that signs the mandate and owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**Debtor <Dbtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 7.4.2.4.2.18 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor, to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

*Impacted by:* C10 "IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule", C9 "IdentificationAndProxyGuideline"

**DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>** contains the following elements (see "CashAccount40" on page 219 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		220
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	220
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		221
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		221

#### Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

```
Following Must be True
  /Identification Must be present
Or    /Proxy Must be present
```

#### 7.4.2.4.2.19 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

**DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>** contains the following elements (see "BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8" on page 225 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

#### 7.4.2.4.2.20 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

**UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>** contains the following elements (see "PartyIdentification272" on page 244 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 7.4.2.4.2.21 MandateReference <MndtRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Reference assigned by a creditor or ultimate creditor for internal usage for the mandate.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

**7.4.2.4.2.22 ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Provides information to identify the underlying documents associated with the mandate.**ReferredDocument <RfrdDoc>** contains the following **ReferredMandateDocument2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[0..1]			215
	<b>CodeOrProprietary &lt;CdOrPrtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]			215
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		216
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		216
	<b>Issuer &lt;Issr&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		216
	<b>Number &lt;Nb&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		216
	<b>CreditorReference &lt;CdtrRef&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		216
	<b>RelatedDate &lt;RltdDt&gt;</b>	[0..1]			216
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]			217
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		217
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		217
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Date		217

**7.4.2.4.2.22.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the type of referred document.**Type <Tp>** contains the following **DocumentType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>CodeOrProprietary &lt;CdOrPrtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]			215
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		216
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		216
	<b>Issuer &lt;Issr&gt;</b>	[0..1]	Text		216

**7.4.2.4.2.22.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Coded or proprietary format referred document type.

**CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>** contains one of the following **DocumentType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		216
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		216

#### 7.4.2.4.2.22.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of remittance document, as published in an external document type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDocumentType1Code" on page 265

#### 7.4.2.4.2.22.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of remittance document, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 7.4.2.4.2.22.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 7.4.2.4.2.22.2 Number <Nb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 7.4.2.4.2.22.3 CreditorReference <CdtrRef>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification as assigned by the creditor to the referred document shared with the debtor for its own reference.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 7.4.2.4.2.22.4 RelatedDate <RltdDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and type associated with the referred document.



**RelatedDate <RltdDt>** contains the following **DateAndType1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	<b>Type &lt;Tp&gt;</b>	[1..1]			217
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		217
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		217
	<b>Date &lt;Dt&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Date		217

#### 7.4.2.4.2.22.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Type of date associated with the referred document.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DateType2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	<b>Code &lt;Cd&gt;</b>	[1..1]	CodeSet		217
Or}	<b>Proprietary &lt;Prtry&gt;</b>	[1..1]	Text		217

##### 7.4.2.4.2.22.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date type, as published in an external date type code set.

*Datatype:* "ExternalDateType1Code" on page 264

##### 7.4.2.4.2.22.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the date type, in a free-text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

##### 7.4.2.4.2.22.4.2 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 270

#### 7.4.2.5 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* C12 "SupplementaryDataRule"

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1" on page 243](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		243
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		243

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 7.4.3 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

*Impacted by:* [C12 "SupplementaryDataRule"](#)

**SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>** contains the following elements (see ["SupplementaryData1" on page 243](#) for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		243
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		243

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

## 8 Message Items Types

### 8.1 MessageComponents

#### 8.1.1 Account

##### 8.1.1.1 CashAccountType2Choice

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		219
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		219

##### 8.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Account type, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "ExternalCashAccountType1Code" on page 264

##### 8.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Nature or use of the account in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

##### 8.1.1.2 CashAccount40

*Definition:* Provides the details to identify an account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		220
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		220
	Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C2	220
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		221
	Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		221

**Constraints**

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Following Must be True  
     /Identification Must be present  
 Or     /Proxy Must be present

**8.1.1.2.1 Identification <Id>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

**Identification <Id>** contains one of the following elements (see "[AccountIdentification4Choice](#)" on page 223 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C8	223
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		224

**8.1.1.2.2 Type <Tp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following elements (see "[CashAccountType2Choice](#)" on page 219 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		219
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		219

**8.1.1.2.3 Currency <Ccy>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

Usage: Currency should only be used in case one and the same account number covers several currencies

and the initiating party needs to identify which currency needs to be used for settlement on the account.

*Impacted by:* [C2 "ActiveOrHistoricCurrency"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode"](#) on page 262

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**8.1.1.2.4 Name <Nm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

*Usage:* The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 275

**8.1.1.2.5 Proxy <Prxy>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies an alternate assumed name for the identification of the account.

**Proxy <Prxy>** contains the following elements (see "ProxyAccountIdentification1" on page 222 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			222
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		223
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		223
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		223

**8.1.1.3 GenericAccountIdentification1**

*Definition:* Information related to a generic account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		221
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			222
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		222
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		222
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		222

**8.1.1.3.1 Identification <Id>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.

*Datatype:* "Max34Text" on page 274

#### 8.1.1.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **AccountSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		222
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		222

##### 8.1.1.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalAccountIdentification1Code" on page 263

##### 8.1.1.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

##### 8.1.1.3.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 8.1.1.4 ProxyAccountIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to a proxy identification of the account.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[0..1]			222
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		223
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		223
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		223

##### 8.1.1.4.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of the proxy identification.

**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **ProxyAccountType1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		223
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		223

#### 8.1.1.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalProxyAccountType1Code" on page 267

#### 8.1.1.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 8.1.1.4.2 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification used to indicate the account identification under another specified name.

*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 274

## 8.1.2 Account Identification

### 8.1.2.1 AccountIdentification4Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the unique identification of an account as assigned by the account servicer.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet	C8	223
Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		224

#### 8.1.2.1.1 IBAN <IBAN>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* International Bank Account Number (IBAN) - identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer. Further specifications of the format and content of the IBAN can be found in the standard ISO 13616 "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" version 1997-10-01, or later revisions.

*Impacted by:* C8 "IBAN"

*Datatype:* "IBAN2007Identifier" on page 271

**Constraints**

- **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**8.1.2.1.2 Other <Othr>**

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an account, as assigned by the account servicer, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericAccountIdentification1](#)" on page 221 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		221
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			222
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		222
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		222
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		222

**8.1.3 Financial Institution Identification****8.1.3.1 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2**

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify a member of the clearing system.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]	±		224
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		225

**8.1.3.1.1 ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

**ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>** contains one of the following elements (see "[ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice](#)" on page 259 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		260
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		260



**8.1.3.1.2 MemberIdentification <Mmbld>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Identification of a member of a clearing system.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275**8.1.3.2 BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8***Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution or a branch of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			225
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227
	BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			228
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

**8.1.3.2.1 FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution, as assigned under an internationally recognised or proprietary identification scheme.**FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>** contains the following **FinancialInstitutionIdentification23** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C4	226
	ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		226
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		226
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		226
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		226
	Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		227

**8.1.3.2.1.1 BICFI <BICFI>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".*Impacted by:* C4 "BICFI"*Datatype:* "BICFIDec2014Identifier" on page 271**Constraints**

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**8.1.3.2.1.2 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Information used to identify a member within a clearing system.

**ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>** contains the following elements (see "ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2" on page 224 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]	±		224
	MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		225

**8.1.3.2.1.3 LEI <LEI>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Legal entity identifier of the financial institution.*Datatype:* "LEIIdentifier" on page 271**8.1.3.2.1.4 Name <Nm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 273**8.1.3.2.1.5 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstIAdr>** contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress27" on page 256 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			256
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		257
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		257
	CareOf <CareOf>	[0..1]	Text		257
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		257
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		257
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		258
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		258
	UnitNumber <UnitNb>	[0..1]	Text		258
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		258
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		258
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		258
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		259
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		259
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		259
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		259
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	259
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		259

#### 8.1.3.2.1.6 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an agent, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericFinancialIdentification1](#)" on page 229 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		230
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			230
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		230
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		230
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		230

#### 8.1.3.2.2 BranchIdentification <BrnchId>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

*Usage:* This component should be used in case the identification information in the financial institution component does not provide identification up to branch level.

**BranchIdentification <BrnchId>** contains the following **BranchData5** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		228
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		228
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		228
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		228

##### 8.1.3.2.2.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a branch of a financial institution.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 275

##### 8.1.3.2.2.2 LEI <LEI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identification for the branch of the financial institution.

*Datatype:* "[LEIIdentifier](#)" on page 271

##### 8.1.3.2.2.3 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

*Datatype:* "[Max140Text](#)" on page 273

##### 8.1.3.2.2.4 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstlAdr>** contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress27" on page 256 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			256
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		257
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		257
	CareOf <CareOf>	[0..1]	Text		257
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		257
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		257
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		258
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		258
	UnitNumber <UnitNb>	[0..1]	Text		258
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		258
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		258
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		258
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		259
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		259
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		259
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		259
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	259
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		259

### 8.1.3.3 GenericFinancialIdentification1

*Definition:* Information related to an identification of a financial institution.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		230
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			230
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		230
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		230
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		230

**8.1.3.3.1 Identification <Id>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275**8.1.3.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **FinancialIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		230
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		230

**8.1.3.3.2.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.*Datatype:* "ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code" on page 265**8.1.3.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275**8.1.3.3.3 Issuer <Issr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275**8.1.4 Frequency****8.1.4.1 Frequency37Choice***Definition:* Choice of format for a frequency, for example, the frequency of payment.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		230
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		231

**8.1.4.1.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Frequency expressed as an ISO 20022 code.

*Datatype:* "Frequency10Code" on page 268

CodeName	Name	Definition
NEVR	Never	Event does never take place.
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
RATE	Rate	Event takes place based on a change of a rate.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.

#### 8.1.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Frequency expressed as a proprietary code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 8.1.4.2 Frequency36Choice

*Definition:* Choice of format for a frequency, for example, the frequency of payment.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		231
Or	Period <Prd>	[1..1]			232
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		232
	CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>	[1..1]	Quantity		233
Or}	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]			233
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		233
	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		233

##### 8.1.4.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a frequency in terms of a specified period type.

*Datatype:* "Frequency6Code" on page 268

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.

CodeName	Name	Definition
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

#### 8.1.4.2.2 Period <Prd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a frequency in terms of a count per period within a specified period type.

**Period <Prd>** contains the following **FrequencyPeriod1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		232
	CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>	[1..1]	Quantity		233

#### 8.1.4.2.2.1 Type <Tp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Period for which the number of instructions are to be created and processed.

*Datatype:* "Frequency6Code" on page 268

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.



**8.1.4.2.2.2 CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Number of instructions to be created and processed during the specified period.*Datatype:* "DecimalNumber" on page 272**8.1.4.2.3 PointInTime <PtInTm>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies a frequency in terms of an exact point in time or moment within a specified period type.**PointInTime <PtInTm>** contains the following **FrequencyAndMoment1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		233
	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		233

**8.1.4.2.3.1 Type <Tp>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Period for which the number of instructions are to be created and processed.*Datatype:* "Frequency6Code" on page 268

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

**8.1.4.2.3.2 PointInTime <PtInTm>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Further information on the exact point in time the event should take place.*Datatype:* "Exact2NumericText" on page 273

## 8.1.5 Identification Information

### 8.1.5.1 GenericIdentification30

*Definition:* Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		234
	Issuer <Issr>	[1..1]	Text		234
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		234

#### 8.1.5.1.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Proprietary information, often a code, issued by the data source scheme issuer.

*Datatype:* "Exact4AlphaNumericText" on page 273

#### 8.1.5.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 8.1.5.1.3 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Short textual description of the scheme.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

## 8.1.6 Mandate

### 8.1.6.1 MandateAuthentication1

*Definition:* Specifies the transport authentication details related to the mandate.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageAuthenticationCode <MsgAuthntcnCd>	[0..1]	Text		234
	Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		235
	Channel <ChanI>	[0..1]			235
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		235
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		235

#### 8.1.6.1.1 MessageAuthenticationCode <MsgAuthntcnCd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a piece of information used to authenticate a message, that is to confirm that the message came from the stated sender (its authenticity) and has not been changed in transit (its integrity).

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 274

#### 8.1.6.1.2 Date <Dt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date when the authentication was conducted.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 270

#### 8.1.6.1.3 Channel <Chanl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Channel used to transmit the authentication information.

**Channel <Chanl>** contains one of the following **AuthenticationChannel1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		235
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		235

##### 8.1.6.1.3.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Authentication channel expressed as an external ISO 20022 code.

*Datatype:* "ExternalAuthenticationChannel1Code" on page 263

##### 8.1.6.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Authentication channel expressed as a proprietary code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 8.1.6.2 MandateOccurrences5

*Definition:* Provides further details related to the duration of the mandate and the occurrence of the underlying transactions.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	SequenceType <SeqTp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		236
	Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		236
	Duration <Drtn>	[0..1]			236
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		237
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237
	FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		237

#### 8.1.6.2.1 SequenceType <SeqTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the underlying transaction sequence as either recurring or one-off.

*Datatype:* "SequenceType2Code" on page 269

CodeName	Name	Definition
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.

#### 8.1.6.2.2 Frequency <Frqcy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Regularity with which instructions are to be created and processed.

**Frequency <Frqcy>** contains one of the following elements (see "Frequency36Choice" on page 231 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		231
Or	Period <Prd>	[1..1]			232
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		232
	CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>	[1..1]	Quantity		233
Or}	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]			233
	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		233
	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		233

#### 8.1.6.2.3 Duration <Drtn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Length of time for which the mandate remains valid.

**Duration <Drtn>** contains the following **DatePeriod3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		237
	ToDate <ToDt>	[0..1]	Date		237

#### 8.1.6.2.3.1 FromDate <FrDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Start date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 270

#### 8.1.6.2.3.2 ToDate <ToDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* End date of the range.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 270

#### 8.1.6.2.4 FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date of the first collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 270

#### 8.1.6.2.5 FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date of the final collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 270

### 8.1.6.3 MandateAdjustment1

*Definition:* Specifies the details for the adjustment of the mandate.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAdjustmentRuleIndicator <DtAdjstmntRuleInd>	[1..1]	Indicator		237
	Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	±		238
	Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	Amount	C1, C7	238
	Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		238

#### 8.1.6.3.1 DateAdjustmentRuleIndicator <DtAdjstmntRuleInd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies whether an adjustment is to be applied on pre-agreed collection date or not.

*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see "TrueFalseIndicator" on page 272):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

#### 8.1.6.3.2 Category <Ctgy>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Defines the category of adjustment.

**Category <Ctgy>** contains one of the following elements (see "[Frequency37Choice](#)" on page 230 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		230
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		231

#### 8.1.6.3.3 Amount <Amt>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Pre-agreed amount to increase or decrease the mandate amount as justified per information in the category.

*Impacted by:* [C1 "ActiveCurrency"](#), [C7 "CurrencyAmount"](#)

*Datatype:* ["ActiveCurrencyAndAmount"](#) on page 260

##### Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

#### 8.1.6.3.4 Rate <Rate>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Pre-agreed increase or decrease rate that will be applied to the collection amount.

*Datatype:* ["PercentageRate"](#) on page 272

#### 8.1.6.4 MandateTypeInformation2

*Definition:* Set of elements used to further detail the information related to the type of payment.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		239
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		239
	LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			239
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			240
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240
	Classification <Clssfctn>	[0..1]	±		240

#### 8.1.6.4.1 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Agreement under which or rules under which the mandate resides.

**ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>** contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		239
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		239

##### 8.1.6.4.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalServiceLevel1Code" on page 267

##### 8.1.6.4.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 8.1.6.4.2 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* User community specific instrument.

*Usage:* This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

**LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>** contains one of the following **LocalInstrument2Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240

#### 8.1.6.4.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalLocalInstrument1Code" on page 265

#### 8.1.6.4.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 8.1.6.4.3 CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the high level purpose of the mandate based on a set of pre-defined categories.

**CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>** contains one of the following **CategoryPurpose1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		240
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		240

#### 8.1.6.4.3.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code" on page 264

#### 8.1.6.4.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Category purpose, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 8.1.6.4.4 Classification <Clssfctn>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Type of direct debit instruction.



**Classification <Clssfctn>** contains one of the following elements (see "[MandateClassification1Choice](#)" on page 241 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		241

### 8.1.6.5 MandateClassification1Choice

*Definition:* Specifies the high level purpose of the instruction based on a set of pre-defined categories.

*Usage:* This is used by the initiating party to provide information concerning the processing of the payment. It is likely to trigger special processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		241
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		241

#### 8.1.6.5.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

*Datatype:* "[MandateClassification1Code](#)" on page 269

CodeName	Name	Definition
FIXE	Fixed	Direct debit amount is fixed.
USGB	UsageBased	Direct debit amount is based on usage.
VARI	Variable	Direct debit amount is variable.

#### 8.1.6.5.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Category purpose, in a proprietary form.

*Datatype:* "[Max35Text](#)" on page 275

## 8.1.7 Miscellaneous

### 8.1.7.1 OriginalMessageInformation1

*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by the original instructing party, to unambiguously identify the message.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		242
	MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		242
	CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		242

#### 8.1.7.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Point to point reference, as assigned by the original initiating party, to unambiguously identify the original mandate request message.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 8.1.7.1.2 MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the message name identifier to which the message refers.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 8.1.7.1.3 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and time at which the message was created.

*Datatype:* "ISODateTime" on page 270

### 8.1.7.2 Authorisation1Choice

*Definition:* Provides the details on the user identification or any user key that allows to check if the initiating party is allowed to issue the transaction.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		242
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		243

#### 8.1.7.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the authorisation, in a coded form.

*Datatype:* "Authorisation1Code" on page 262

CodeName	Name	Definition
AUTH	PreAuthorisedFile	Indicates a file has been pre authorised or approved within the originating customer environment and no further approval is required.
FDET	FileLevelAuthorisationDetails	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view both the payment information block and

CodeName	Name	Definition
		supporting customer credit transaction detail.
FSUM	FileLevelAuthorisationSummary	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view only the payment information block level information.
ILEV	InstructionLevelAuthorisation	Indicates that a file requires all customer transactions to be authorised or approved.

#### 8.1.7.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the authorisation, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max128Text" on page 273

#### 8.1.7.3 SupplementaryData1

*Definition:* Additional information that can not be captured in the structured fields and/or any other specific block.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		243
	Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		243

#### Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

##### 8.1.7.3.1 PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unambiguous reference to the location where the supplementary data must be inserted in the message instance.

In the case of XML, this is expressed by a valid XPath.

*Datatype:* "Max350Text" on page 274

##### 8.1.7.3.2 Envelope <Envlp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Technical element wrapping the supplementary data.

*Type:* (External Schema)

Technical component that contains the validated supplementary data information. This technical envelope allows to segregate the supplementary data information from any other information.

## 8.1.8 Party Identification

### 8.1.8.1 PartyIdentification272

*Definition:* Specifies the identification of a person or an organisation.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		244
	PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		245
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]			245
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251
	CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	251
	ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		251

#### 8.1.8.1.1 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 273

#### 8.1.8.1.2 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

**PostalAddress <PstlAdr>** contains the following elements (see "PostalAddress27" on page 256 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			256
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		257
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		257
	CareOf <CareOf>	[0..1]	Text		257
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		257
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		257
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		258
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		258
	UnitNumber <UnitNb>	[0..1]	Text		258
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		258
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		258
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		258
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		259
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		259
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		259
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		259
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	259
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		259

#### 8.1.8.1.3 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a party.

**Identification <Id>** contains one of the following **Party52Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			246
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248
Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			248
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251

#### 8.1.8.1.3.1 OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

**OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>** contains the following **OrganisationIdentification39** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet	C3	247
	LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		247
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			247
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248

#### 8.1.8.1.3.1.1 AnyBIC <AnyBIC>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Business identification code of the organisation.

*Impacted by:* C3 "AnyBIC"

*Datatype:* "AnyBICDec2014Identifier" on page 270

#### Constraints

- **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

#### 8.1.8.1.3.1.2 LEI <LEI>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Legal entity identification as an alternate identification for a party.

*Datatype:* "LEIIdentifier" on page 271

#### 8.1.8.1.3.1.3 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Unique identification of an organisation, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following **GenericOrganisationIdentification3** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		248
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			248
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		248

#### 8.1.8.1.3.1.3.1 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.

*Datatype:* "Max256Text" on page 274

#### 8.1.8.1.3.1.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **OrganisationIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		248
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		248

#### 8.1.8.1.3.1.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code" on page 267

#### 8.1.8.1.3.1.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 8.1.8.1.3.1.3.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 8.1.8.1.3.2 PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>

*Presence:* [1..1]



*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person, for example a passport.

**PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>** contains the following **PersonIdentification18** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			249
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			250
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251

#### 8.1.8.1.3.2.1 DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Date and place of birth of a person.

**DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>** contains the following **DateAndPlaceOfBirth1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		249
	ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		249
	CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		250
	CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet	C5	250

##### 8.1.8.1.3.2.1.1 BirthDate <BirthDt>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Date on which a person is born.

*Datatype:* "ISODate" on page 270

##### 8.1.8.1.3.2.1.2 ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Province where a person was born.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

**8.1.8.1.3.2.1.3 CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* City where a person was born.*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275**8.1.8.1.3.2.1.4 CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Country where a person was born.*Impacted by:* C5 "Country"*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 263**Constraints**

- Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**8.1.8.1.3.2.2 Other <Othr>***Presence:* [0..\*]*Definition:* Unique identification of a person, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.**Other <Othr>** contains the following **GenericPersonIdentification2** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		250
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			250
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251
	Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		251

**8.1.8.1.3.2.2.1 Identification <Id>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.*Datatype:* "Max256Text" on page 274**8.1.8.1.3.2.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

**SchemaName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **PersonIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		251
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		251

#### 8.1.8.1.3.2.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

*Datatype:* "ExternalPersonIdentification1Code" on page 267

#### 8.1.8.1.3.2.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 8.1.8.1.3.2.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### 8.1.8.1.4 CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Country in which a person resides (the place of a person's home). In the case of a company, it is the country from which the affairs of that company are directed.

*Impacted by:* C5 "Country"

*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 263

#### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

#### 8.1.8.1.5 ContactDetails <CtctDtls>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Set of elements used to indicate how to contact the party.

**ContactDetails <CtctDtls>** contains the following elements (see "Contact13" on page 252 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		253
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		253
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		253
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		254
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		254
	URLAddress <URLAdr>	[0..1]	Text		254
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		254
	EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>	[0..1]	Text		254
	JobTitle <JobTitl>	[0..1]	Text		254
	Responsibility <Rspnsblty>	[0..1]	Text		254
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		254
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			255
	ChannelType <ChanlTp>	[1..1]	Text		255
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		255
	PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		255

## 8.1.9 Person Identification

### 8.1.9.1 Contact13

*Definition:* Specifies the details of the contact person.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		253
	Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		253
	PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		253
	MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		254
	FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		254
	URLAddress <URLAdr>	[0..1]	Text		254
	EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		254
	EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>	[0..1]	Text		254
	JobTitle <JobTitl>	[0..1]	Text		254
	Responsibility <Rspnsblty>	[0..1]	Text		254
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		254
	Other <Othr>	[0..*]			255
	ChannelType <ChanlTp>	[1..1]	Text		255
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		255
	PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		255

#### 8.1.9.1.1 NamePrefix <NmPrfx>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

*Datatype:* "NamePrefix2Code" on page 269

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

#### 8.1.9.1.2 Name <Nm>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 273

#### 8.1.9.1.3 PhoneNumber <PhneNb>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collection of information that identifies a phone number, as defined by telecom services.

*Datatype:* "PhoneNumber" on page 275

#### **8.1.9.1.4 MobileNumber <MobNb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collection of information that identifies a mobile phone number, as defined by telecom services.

*Datatype:* "PhoneNumber" on page 275

#### **8.1.9.1.5 FaxNumber <FaxNb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Collection of information that identifies a FAX number, as defined by telecom services.

*Datatype:* "PhoneNumber" on page 275

#### **8.1.9.1.6 URLAddress <URLAdr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Address for the Universal Resource Locator (URL), for example an address used over the www (HTTP) service.

*Datatype:* "Max2048Text" on page 274

#### **8.1.9.1.7 EmailAddress <EmailAdr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Address for electronic mail (e-mail).

*Datatype:* "Max256Text" on page 274

#### **8.1.9.1.8 EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Purpose for which an email address may be used.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### **8.1.9.1.9 JobTitle <JobTitl>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Title of the function.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### **8.1.9.1.10 Responsibility <Rspnsblty>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Role of a person in an organisation.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

#### **8.1.9.1.11 Department <Dept>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 275

#### 8.1.9.1.12 Other <Othr>

*Presence:* [0..\*]

*Definition:* Contact details in another form.

**Other <Othr>** contains the following **OtherContact1** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	ChannelType <ChanTp>	[1..1]	Text		255
	Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		255

##### 8.1.9.1.12.1 ChannelType <ChanTp>

*Presence:* [1..1]

*Definition:* Method used to contact the financial institution's contact for the specific tax region.

*Datatype:* "Max4Text" on page 275

##### 8.1.9.1.12.2 Identification <Id>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Communication value such as phone number or email address.

*Datatype:* "Max128Text" on page 273

#### 8.1.9.1.13 PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Preferred method used to reach the contact.

*Datatype:* "PreferredContactMethod2Code" on page 269

CodeName	Name	Definition
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.
ONLI	Online	Preferred method used to reach the contact is online.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.

## 8.1.10 Postal Address

### 8.1.10.1 PostalAddress27

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			256
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		257
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		257
	CareOf <CareOf>	[0..1]	Text		257
	Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		257
	SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		257
	StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		258
	BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		258
	Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		258
	UnitNumber <UnitNb>	[0..1]	Text		258
	PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		258
	Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		258
	PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		258
	TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		259
	TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		259
	DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		259
	CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		259
	Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet	C5	259
	AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		259

#### 8.1.10.1.1 AddressType <AdrTp>

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies the nature of the postal address.

**AddressType <AdrTp>** contains one of the following **AddressType3Choice** elements

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		257
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		257



**8.1.10.1.1 Code <Cd>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Type of address expressed as a code.*Datatype:* "AddressType2Code" on page 262

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

**8.1.10.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Type of address expressed as a proprietary code.

**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see "[GenericIdentification30](#)" on page 234 for details)

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		234
	Issuer <Issr>	[1..1]	Text		234
	SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		234

**8.1.10.1.2 CareOf <CareOf>***Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies an addressee that is accepting the correspondence for the intended recipient. Using care of ensures the correspondence reaches the right recipient rather than getting returned to the sender.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 273**8.1.10.1.3 Department <Dept>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 275**8.1.10.1.4 SubDepartment <SubDept>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identification of a sub-division of a large organisation or building.*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 275

**8.1.10.1.5 StreetName <StrtNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of a street or thoroughfare.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 273

**8.1.10.1.6 BuildingNumber <BldgNb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Number that identifies the position of a building on a street.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 274

**8.1.10.1.7 BuildingName <BldgNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of the building or house.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 273

**8.1.10.1.8 Floor <Flr>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Floor or storey within a building.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 275

**8.1.10.1.9 UnitNumber <UnitNb>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a flat or dwelling within the building.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 274

**8.1.10.1.10 PostBox <PstBx>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Numbered box in a post office, assigned to a person or organisation, where letters are kept until called for.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 274

**8.1.10.1.11 Room <Room>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Building room number.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 275

**8.1.10.1.12 PostCode <PstCd>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifier consisting of a group of letters and/or numbers that is added to a postal address to assist the sorting of mail.

*Datatype:* "Max16Text" on page 274

**8.1.10.1.13 TownName <TwnNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Name of a built-up area, with defined boundaries, and a local government.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 273

**8.1.10.1.14 TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Specific location name within the town.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 273

**8.1.10.1.15 DistrictName <DstrctNm>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a subdivision within a country sub-division.

*Datatype:* "Max140Text" on page 273

**8.1.10.1.16 CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Identifies a subdivision of a country such as state, region, county.

*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

**8.1.10.1.17 Country <Ctry>**

*Presence:* [0..1]

*Definition:* Nation with its own government.

*Impacted by:* C5 "Country"

*Datatype:* "CountryCode" on page 263

**Constraints**

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

**8.1.10.1.18 AddressLine <AdrLine>**

*Presence:* [0..7]

*Definition:* Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services, presented in free format text.

*Datatype:* "Max70Text" on page 275

**8.1.11 System Identification****8.1.11.1 ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice**

*Definition:* Choice of a clearing system identifier.

Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		260
Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		260

8.1.11.1.1 Code <Cd>

*Presence:* [1..1]  
*Definition:* Identification of a clearing system, in a coded form as published in an external list.  
*Datatype:* "ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code" on page 264

8.1.11.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

*Presence:* [1..1]  
*Definition:* Identification code for a clearing system, that has not yet been identified in the list of clearing systems.  
*Datatype:* "Max35Text" on page 275

8.2 Message Datatypes

8.2.1 Amount

8.2.1.1 ActiveCurrencyAndAmount

*Definition:* A number of monetary units specified in an active currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.  
*Type:* Amount  
This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveCurrencyCode" on page 261

Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

Constraints

- ActiveCurrency**  
The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217

Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**8.2.1.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount**

*Definition:* A number of monetary units specified in an active or a historic currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

*Type:* Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	"ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode" on page 262

**Format**

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

**8.2.2 CodeSet**

**8.2.2.1 ActiveCurrencyCode**

*Definition:* A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}
---------	------------

**Constraints**

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**8.2.2.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode**

*Definition:* A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

pattern [A-Z]{3,3}

**Constraints**

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

**8.2.2.3 AddressType2Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the type of address.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

**8.2.2.4 Authorisation1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the level of approval depending on a number of factors, including payment type, threshold amount or local country or operations practice.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
AUTH	PreAuthorisedFile	Indicates a file has been pre authorised or approved within the originating

CodeName	Name	Definition
		customer environment and no further approval is required.
FDET	FileLevelAuthorisationDetails	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view both the payment information block and supporting customer credit transaction detail.
FSUM	FileLevelAuthorisationSummary	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view only the payment information block level information.
ILEV	InstructionLevelAuthorisation	Indicates that a file requires all customer transactions to be authorised or approved.

### 8.2.2.5 CountryCode

*Definition:* Code to identify a country, a dependency, or another area of particular geopolitical interest, on the basis of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

*Type:* CodeSet

#### Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}

#### Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

### 8.2.2.6 ExternalAccountIdentification1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the external account identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

#### Format

minLength 1

maxLength 4

### 8.2.2.7 ExternalAuthenticationChannel1Code

*Definition:* Specifies the transaction authentication channel, as published in an external authentication channel code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

8.2.2.8 ExternalCashAccountType1Code

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the cash account in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

8.2.2.9 ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code

Definition: Specifies the category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

8.2.2.10 ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the clearing system identification code, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	5

8.2.2.11 ExternalDateType1Code

Definition: Defines the type of date, as published in an external date type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).



Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

8.2.2.12 ExternalDocumentType1Code

Definition: Specifies the document type as published in an external document type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

8.2.2.13 ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external financial institution identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

8.2.2.14 ExternalLocalInstrument1Code

Definition: Specifies the external local instrument code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	35

**8.2.2.15 ExternalMandateReason1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external mandate processing reason code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**8.2.2.16 ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external mandate setup reason code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**8.2.2.17 ExternalMandateStatus1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external mandate status code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**8.2.2.18 ExternalMandateSuspensionReason1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external mandate suspension reason code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**8.2.2.19 ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external organisation identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**8.2.2.20 ExternalPersonIdentification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external person identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**8.2.2.21 ExternalProxyAccountType1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external proxy account type code, as published in the proxy account type external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

*Type:* CodeSet

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	4

**8.2.2.22 ExternalServiceLevel1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the external service level code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from [www.iso20022.org](http://www.iso20022.org).

Type: CodeSet

#### Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

### 8.2.2.23 Frequency10Code

*Definition:* Specifies the regularity of an event.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
NEVR	Never	Event does never take place.
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
RATE	Rate	Event takes place based on a change of a rate.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.

### 8.2.2.24 Frequency6Code

*Definition:* Specifies the regularity of an event.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

**8.2.2.25 MandateClassification1Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the type of direct debit amount, such as fixed or variable.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FIXE	Fixed	Direct debit amount is fixed.
USGB	UsageBased	Direct debit amount is based on usage.
VARI	Variable	Direct debit amount is variable.

**8.2.2.26 NamePrefix2Code**

*Definition:* Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

**8.2.2.27 PreferredContactMethod2Code**

*Definition:* Preferred method used to reach the individual contact within an organisation.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.
ONLI	Online	Preferred method used to reach the contact is online.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.

**8.2.2.28 SequenceType2Code**

*Definition:* Specifies whether a once off transaction is covered or whether recurring transactions are covered.

*Type:* CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.

## 8.2.3 Date

### 8.2.3.1 ISODate

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar year expressed in the YYYY-MM-DD format. This representation is defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

*Type:* Date

## 8.2.4 DateTime

### 8.2.4.1 ISODateTime

*Definition:* A particular point in the progression of time defined by a mandatory date and a mandatory time component, expressed in either UTC time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

*Type:* DateTime

## 8.2.5 IdentifierSet

### 8.2.5.1 AnyBICDec2014Identifier

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial or non-financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority, as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* SWIFT; AnyBICIdentifier

**Format**

pattern [A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

**Constraints**

- **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**8.2.5.2 BICFIDec2014Identifier**

*Definition:* Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* SWIFT; BICIdentifier

**Format**

pattern [A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

**Constraints**

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

**8.2.5.3 IBAN2007Identifier**

*Definition:* The International Bank Account Number is a code used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer at a financial institution as described in the 2007 edition of the ISO 13616 standard "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" and replaced by the more recent edition of the standard.

*Type:* IdentifierSet

*Identification scheme:* National Banking Association; International Bank Account Number (ISO 13616)

**Format**

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}[0-9]{2,2}[a-zA-Z0-9]{1,30}

**Constraints**

- **IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

**8.2.5.4 LEIIdentifier**

*Definition:* Legal Entity Identifier is a code allocated to a party as described in ISO 17442 "Financial Services - Legal Entity Identifier (LEI)".

*Type:* IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: Global LEI System; LEIIdentifier

Format	
pattern	[A-Z0-9]{18,18}[0-9]{2,2}

## 8.2.6 Indicator

### 8.2.6.1 TrueFalseIndicator

Definition: A flag indicating a True or False value.

Type: Indicator

Meaning When True: True

Meaning When False: False

### 8.2.6.2 YesNoIndicator

Definition: Indicates a "Yes" or "No" type of answer for an element.

Type: Indicator

Meaning When True: Yes

Meaning When False: No

## 8.2.7 Quantity

### 8.2.7.1 DecimalNumber

Definition: Number of objects represented as a decimal number, for example 0.75 or 45.6.

Type: Quantity

Format	
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	17

## 8.2.8 Rate

### 8.2.8.1 PercentageRate

Definition: Rate expressed as a percentage, that is, in hundredths, for example, 0.7 is 7/10 of a percent, and 7.0 is 7%.

Type: Rate

Format	
totalDigits	11
fractionDigits	10
baseValue	100.0



## 8.2.9Text

### 8.2.9.1Exact2NumericText

*Definition:* Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 2 digits.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	[0-9]{2}
---------	----------

### 8.2.9.2Exact4AlphaNumericText

*Definition:* Specifies an alphanumeric string with a length of 4 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

pattern	[a-zA-Z0-9]{4}
---------	----------------

### 8.2.9.3Max105Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 105 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	105

### 8.2.9.4Max128Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 128 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	128

### 8.2.9.5Max140Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 140 characters.

*Type:* Text

**Format**

minLength	1
maxLength	140

8.2.9.6 Max16Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 16 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	16

8.2.9.7 Max2048Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 2048 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	2048

8.2.9.8 Max256Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 256 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	256

8.2.9.9 Max34Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 34 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	34

8.2.9.10 Max350Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 350 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	350

8.2.9.11 Max35Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.  
*Type:* Text

Format	
minLength	1
maxLength	35

8.2.9.12 Max4Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.  
*Type:* Text

Format	
minLength	1
maxLength	4

8.2.9.13 Max70Text

*Definition:* Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 70characters.  
*Type:* Text

Format	
minLength	1
maxLength	70

8.2.9.14 PhoneNumber

*Definition:* The collection of information which identifies a specific phone or FAX number as defined by telecom services.

It consists of a "+" followed by the country code (from 1 to 3 characters) then a "-" and finally, any combination of numbers, "(", ")", "+" and "-" (up to 30 characters).

*Type:* Text

Format	
pattern	\+[0-9]{1,3}-[0-9()+\-]{1,30}